ERRATUM

to MCO 3501.29

MARINE CORPS COMBAT READINESS EVALUATION SYSTEM (MCCRES), VOLUME X PARTC, ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN VEHICLE UNITS

1. For administrative purposes, the Publications Control Number (PCN) has been reidentified. Change the PCN "10203355500" to read: "10203362700".



DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY HEADQUARTERS UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS WASHINGTON, DC 20380-0001

MCO 3501.29 C 461 17 MAY 99

MARINE CORPS ORDER 3501.29

From: Commandant of the Marine Corps

To: Distribution List

Subj: MARINE CORPS COMBAT READINESS EVALUATION SYSTEM (MCCRES), VOLUME X PART C, ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN VEHICLE UNITS

Ref: (a) MCO 1553.1B

(b) MCO 1553.3

(c) MCO 1553.5

(d) MCO 3501.1C

Encl: (1) Mission Performance Standards (MPSs)

1. <u>Purpose</u>. To publish revised Mission Performance Standards (MPSs) at enclosure (1) for Assault Amphibian unit level training and evaluation.

2. <u>Background</u>

- a. MCCRES was developed as a part of the Unit Training Management program to further assist FMF commanders to meet established training standards for mission performance, identify training deficiencies, and formulate training plans to increase combat readiness.
- b. MPSs are mission-oriented collective training standards that establish the minimum acceptable foundation for operational performance by FMF units and elements.
- 3. <u>Information</u>. The references provide policy, assign training Responsibilities, and establish the system by which MCCRES is implemented and supported within the Marine Corps. The enclosure, supported by the policies and procedures set forth in the references, provides the MPSs for use in evaluation of the combat readiness of assault amphibian units to perform combat operations.

4. <u>Action</u>. Commanders will:

- a. Use the MPSs contained in the enclosure as guidelines for establishing training goals, training programs, and to prepare for formal readiness evaluations as directed by higher headquarters per the references.
- b. When appropriate, use the MPSs for informal evaluations, and/or as an inventory to determine a unit's current training status and areas for future progressive training programs.
- c. Make every effort to conduct evaluations when the unit is participating in their appropriate role as part of a Marine Air Ground Task Force (MAGTF) with adequate maneuver space. Assault amphibian units need ship-to-shore training areas of at least nine square kilometers at sea combined with an adjacent 12 square kilometers ashore with good trafficability and engagement ranges to

DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

MCO 3501.29 17 May 99

practice Operational Maneuver From The Sea (OMFTS).

- 5. <u>Submission of Recommendations and Requirements</u>. Recommendations concerning the content of this Order are invited. Submit recommendations for additions, deletions, or modifications to CG MCCDC (C461) via the chain of command.
- 6. Reserve Applicability. This Order is applicable to the Marine Corps Reserve.

T S. JONES By direction

DISTRIBUTION: PCN 10203362700

Copy to: 7000110 (55)

7230080 (20) 8145005 (2) 8145001 (1) 7000144 (1)

VOLUME X PART C

MISSION PERFORMANCE STANDARDS

ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN UNITS

INTRODUCTION

This MCCRES is divided into four sections: section A contains the AAV battalion tasks, section B contains the AAV company tasks, section C contains the AAV platoon tasks, and section D contains the mine/countermine platoon tasks.

MCCRES MPSs establish the minimum acceptable standards to properly execute the AAV community's basic missions. Fundamental to the mission of the assault amphibian community is the battalion's ability to execute standard tactical missions listed in the MPSs table of contents. The tasks and standards within the MPSs are derived from doctrine, tactics, techniques and procedures, and recommendations from the operating forces.

The MCCRES and its MPSs have been developed with the goal of enhancing the training readiness of Marine Corps units. The system endeavors to accomplish this by developing a comprehensive series of MPSs for all function areas of the MAGTF. The MPS's tasks and standards attempt to cover the basic missions an AAV unit is expected to perform in combat. The MCCRES is not an end "in and of itself" but a basis from which to prepare for fighting for "fighting smart" in accordance with MCDP 1 Warfighting. It is understood that only a certain number of these elements can be evaluated during any one exercise. Available training areas, environmental restrictions, units to be supported, external support, time and scenario will influence the number of MCCRES MPSs that can be evaluated. However, a series of exercises based upon evaluation objectives derived from a viable unit training program should expand the number of MCCRES tasks to be evaluated and assist in assessing a unit's overall combat readiness. Opportunities should be sought to evaluate those standards not evaluated in a given recent exercise. Keeping this in mind will help avoid the problem of going year after year with certain areas repeatedly not being evaluated.

Tasks are to be evaluated using the "90 percent rule". This rule allows the evaluator to score a "YES", when based on his observation the unit/element attempted and successfully met the standard's criteria at least 90 percent of the time. See the current edition of MCO 3501.1.

EVALUATOR

MCCRES MPSs for assault amphibian units presuppose that personnel and logistics support are sufficient to meet minimum acceptable standards; but it is acknowledged that sufficient people, supplies, and equipment are not always available. The unit is not penalized if they cannot attempt all the standards. When such external factors contribute to limiting a unit's combat readiness, it should be noted in the "COMMENTS" column of an evaluation sheet and recorded in the overall evaluation report

SECTION 10A

ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN BATTALION

TABLE OF CONTENTS

| INTRODUCTION | <u>PAGE</u> 10-1 |
|--|---------------------|
| SECTION 10A - ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN BATTALION | |
| MPS 10A.01 ASSIGNMENT TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS | 10-A-1 |
| MPS 10A.02 AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS | . 10-A-8 |
| MPS 10A.03 SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE | . 10-A-10 |
| MPS 10A.04 SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS | . 10-A-15 |
| MPS 10A.05 NBC DEFENSE OPERATIONS | . 10-A-18 |
| SECTION 10B - ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN COMPANY | |
| MPS 10B.01 ASSIGNMENT TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS | . 10-B-1 |
| MPS 10B.02 AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS | . 10-B-8 |
| MPS 10B.03 SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE | . 10-B-14 |
| MPS 10B.04 SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS | . 10-B-25 |
| MPS 10B.05 CONTINUING ACTIONS BY MARINES | . 10-B-28 |
| MPS 10B.06 NBC OPERATIONS | . 10-B-40 |
| SECTION 10C - ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN PLATOON | |
| MPS 10C.01 ASSIGNMENT TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS | . 10-C-1 |
| MPS 10C.02 AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS | . 10-C-7 |
| MPS 10C.03 SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE | . 10-C-15 |
| MPS 10C.04 SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS | . 10-C-31 |
| MPS 10C.05 CONTINUING ACTIONS BY MARINES | . 10-C-44 |
| SECTION 10D - MINE/COUNTER MINE PLATOON | |
| MPS 10D.01 ASSIGNMENT TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS | . 10-D-1 |
| MPS 10D.02 AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS | . 10-D-7 |
| MPS 10D.03 SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE | . 10-D-16 |
| MPS 10D.04 SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS | . 10-D-31 |
| MPS 10D.05 CONTINUING ACTIONS BY MARINES | . 10-D-34 |

| | | PAGE |
|------------|----------------------------|---------|
| MPS 10D.06 | PREPARE FOR NBC OPERATIONS | 10-D-45 |
| | 10-ii | |

INDEX OF TASKS

| MPS 10A | .01 - | ASSIGNMENT | TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS | <u>PAGE</u> |
|---------|-------|---------------------|--|-------------|
| 1) | TASK | 10A.01.01 | CONDUCT INITIAL PLANNING | 10-A-1 |
| 2) | TASK | 10A.01.02 | COORDINATE INTELLIGENCE FUNCTIONS | 10-A-2 |
| 3) | TASK | 10A.01.03 | COORDINATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING | 10-A-2 |
| 4) | TASK | 10A.01.04 | COORDINATE LOGISTICS PLANNING | 10-A-3 |
| 5) | TASK | 10A.01.05 | OPERATE A COMMAND POST | 10-A-5 |
| 6) | TASK | 10A.01.06 | CONDUCT COMBAT REPORTING | 10-A-6 |
| MPS 10A | .02 - | AMPHIBIOUS | <u>OPERATIONS</u> | |
| 1) | TASK | 10A.02.01 | CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS | 10-A-8 |
| 2) | TASK | 10A.02.02 | PREPARE FOR EMBARKATION | 10-A-8 |
| MPS 10A | .03 - | SUBSEQUENT | OPERATIONS ASHORE | |
| 1) | TASK | 10A.03.01 | PREPARE TO OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA | 10-A-10 |
| 2) | TASK | 10A.03.02 | OCCUPY A BATTALION SUPPORT AREA (BSA) | 10-A-10 |
| 3) | TASK | 10A.03.03 | SUPPORT FORWARD AAV UNITS FROM A BSA | 10-A-11 |
| 4) | | 10A.03.04 ATIONS | COORDINATE MINE/COUNTER MINE (MCM) | 10-A-12 |
| 5) | | | ENSURE CONTINUING ACTION BY MARINES ARE | 10-A-12 |
| 6) | TASK | 10A.03.06 | CONDUCT CONSOLIDATION | 10-A-13 |
| 7) | TASK | 10A.03.07 | CONDUCT CASUALTY EVACUATIONS | 10-A-14 |
| MPS 10A | .04 - | SUPPLY AND | MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS | |
| 1) | TASK | 10A.04.01 | CONDUCT RECOVERY OPERATIONS | 10-A-15 |
| 2) | TASK | 10A.04.02 | CONDUCT SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS | 10-A-16 |
| MPS 10A | .05 - | NBC DEFENS | E OPERATIONS | |
| 1) | TASK | 10A.05.01 | PREPARE FOR NBC DEFENSE OPERATIONS | 10-A-18 |
| 2) | TASK | 10A.05.02 | PREPARE FOR NUCLEAR ATTACK | 10-A-18 |
| 3) | | | RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR | 10-A-19 |
| 4) | | | RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR | 10-A-20 |
| 5) | TASK | 10A.05.05 | PERFORM RADIOLOGICAL DECONTAMINATION | 10-A-21 |
| | | | ENCLO | SURE (1) |

MCO 3501.29 17 MAY 99

| 6) | TASK 10A.05.06 | CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA | 10-A-22 |
|---------|----------------|--|---------|
| 7) | TASK 10A.05.07 | PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE | 10-A-22 |
| 8) | TASK 10A.05.08 | PREPARE FOR CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK | 10-A-23 |
| 9) | TASK 10A.05.09 | RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK | 10-A-24 |
| 10) | TASK 10A.05.10 | PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION | 10-A-27 |
| 11) | | COORDINATE FOR THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION OF | 10-A-28 |
| ENCLOSU | RE (1) | | |

10-A-ii

MPS 10A.01 - NBC DEFENSE OPERATIONS

TASK: 10A.01.01 CONDUCT INITIAL PLANNING

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: Given the mission to support tactical operations either as unit or in direct support. Upon receipt of the order, the AA Bn begins the staff planning process.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Battalion staff conducts mission analysis of supported unit's mission to derive specified and implied tasks. |
|-----|--|
| .2 | Issues a warning order to subordinate companies based on commander's guidance. (KI) |
| .3 | Obtains intelligence data on the enemy, the area of operation, and the weather. |
| .4 | Conducts a detailed terrain analysis (includes use of topographic products and aerial photography when available). |
| .5 | Analyzes the armored, ATGM, NBC, and mine threat posed by the |
| .6 | Incorporates Operational Risk Management (ORM) into planning. |
| .7 | Develops courses of action. |
| .8 | Develops a staff estimate of supportability for each course of action. |
| .9 | Develops appropriate plans after receipt of the commander's decision. |
| .10 | Issues the order. |

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: The focus of this task is on the AA battalion commander as he fulfills his basic responsibilities to the supported unit. The evaluator should note that some of the requirements are one time actions and some are repetitive actions that will reoccur as the tactical situation changes.

KEY INDICATORS:

TIME MANAGEMENT

Ensure commanders allocate 2/3 of available time for planning and preparation by subordinate units. Time is allocated at all levels. In order to fulfill requirements, commanders manage available time to ensure that appropriate rest (sleep) periods are available (tactical situation permitting) in order to ensure that peak efficiency and alertness is maintained.

OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)

Ensure commanders utilize the five step ORM process, per MCO 3500.27, in their planning which includes: identify hazards, assess hazards, make risk decisions, implement controls, and supervise.

MCO 3501.29 17 MAY 99

TASK: 10A.01.02 COORDINATE INTELLIGENCE FUNCTIONS

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AA battalion is assigned the mission to support The higher headquarters unit has an intelligence section fully capable of providing intelligence support to the unit.

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: | Y; | N; | NE |
|------------|-------|----|----|----|
| | | | | |

| .1 | Unit has and uses an SOP that provides procedures for handling intelligence matters, and addresses inter-operability with |
|----|---|
| .2 | Identifies intelligence requirements. |
| .3 | Requests intelligence support. |
| .4 | Performs Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) |
| .5 | Safeguards all classified material and limits access |
| .6 | Stresses intelligence awareness for all assigned personnel. |
| .7 | Ensures intelligence information is disseminated to |
| .8 | Unit is aware of the supported unit's Essential Elements of Information (EEI |
| .9 | Identifies the procedures to be used in handling EPWs (See Task 10E.5.10 PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR). |

11 ____ Advises commander on counterintelligence issues.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

INTELLIGENCE AWARENESS

.10 ____ Publishes daily changes of primary/alternate challenge/passwords;

Intelligence awareness includes:

- Knowledge of the collection means available.

signs/counter-signs.

- Understanding the intelligence capabilities and limitations of the unit.
- Emphasis on Operational Security (OPSEC) at all levels.
- Rapid reporting of raw combat information.
- Exploitation of information gleaned from ${\tt POWs.}$
- Development of relevant EEIs and Operational Intelligence Requirements (OIR).

TASK: 10A.01.03 COORDINATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AA battalion is assigned the mission to support The supported unit is conducting communications planning for all elements. The enemy has the ability to conduct Electronic Warfare Support Measures (ESM) and Electronic Warfare Counter-Measures (ECM) operations.

| .1 | Develops communications requirements. |
|-----|---|
| .2 | Demonstrates knowledge of external communications support |
| .3 | Coordinates communication requirements with available sources. |
| .4 | Develops concept of communications support. |
| .5 | Corrects any interoperability problems. |
| .6 | Develops communications plan (Annex K). |
| .7 | Develops a security plan. |
| .8 | Provides the supported unit's communications personnel with |
| .9 | Advises on command post structure. |
| .10 | Publishes communications plan. |
| .11 | Unit demonstrates a knowledge of alternate communications methods. (KI) |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

ALTERNATE COMMUNICATIONS

Units must:

- $\mbox{-}$ Demonstrate awareness of communications capabilities and limitations during planning.
- Be prepared to erect expedient antenna systems, utilize hand/arm signals, and lay wire, when appropriate.
- Display full cognizance of importance of communications security.

TASK: 10A.01.04 COORDINATE LOGISTICS PLANNING

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AA battalion is assigned in support of tactical supported unit OpOrd calls for full use of AAV assets. The mission requires the AAV Bn to support the forward deployed AA units.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Identifies AAV Combat Service Support (CSS) requirements during the planning phase for forward deployed AAV units. |
|-----|---|
| .2 | Establishes liaison with the MAGTF CSS element as required for higher level logistic supported unit. |
| .3 | Identifies any logistics requirements beyond the supported unit's capability. |
| .4 | Ensures vehicles maintenance/casualty recovery procedures are |
| .5 | Conducts liaison with the supported unit upon receipt of the |
| .6 | Determines availability and capabilities of AAV unit logistics and support vehicles. |
| .7 | Ensures sustainment procedures are established. |
| .8 | Determines required procedures are established. |
| .9 | Operates a Battalion Aid Station (BAS). |
| .10 | Determines the priorities of AAV support. |
| .11 | Determines air delivery requirements for CSS, if available. |
| .12 | Operates a Logistics Operations Center (LOC). |
| .13 | Reports all changes in operational readiness to higher |
| .14 | Battalion staff coordinates all maintenance, recovery, and logistics requirements and establishes appropriate support arrangements with higher headquarters and CSSE. |
| .15 | Support arrangements must feasible support the mission and address all equipment, personnel, and supply support organic |
| .16 | Coordinates with higher headquarters/CSSE as required for higher level logistical support requirements not within the |
| .17 | Coordinate contact team activities with supporting CSSE to ensure the contact teams become OPCON to the AAV Battalion's |
| .18 | Determine operational/thorough decontamination requirements and support needed. |

 $\underline{\text{EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS}}\colon$ Evaluator examines the unit performance throughout all phases of operations.

KEY INDICATORS:

LOGISTIC SUPPORT

Ensure the AAV unit logistics requirements include:

- Procedures for requesting support when in either a general or direct support role.
- Request formats.
- Standardized loads for resupply.
- Specific procedures for recovery operations.
- Procedures for 3rd echelon maintenance under field conditions.
- Procedures for replacement of major end items.
- Unit Density List (UDL) submitted must include all assets organic to the unit.
- AAV unit logistics availability should include equipment status. Class IX parts, PEB, expendable materials, etc. on hand. Additional consideration should be given to maintenance administrative (MIMMS/SASSY), tools and test equipment, publications, calibration, and scheduled Preventative Maintenance (PM).
 - Ensure the supported unit is briefed on logistic requirements.

TASK: 10A.01.05 OPERATE A COMMAND POST

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AA battalion is operating a battalion Combat and Logistics Operation Center (LOC) in support of forward deployed companies.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Organizes and operates the command post per unit SOP. |
|----|---|
| .2 | Determines ability to sustain 24 hour operations. |
| .3 | Staffs the command post with appropriate personnel. |
| .4 | Ensures proper site selection. |
| .5 | Identifies alternate sites in the event the Command Post must be displaced rapidly. |
| .6 | Prepares plans for the establishment of forward CPs per unit |
| .7 | Demonstrates ability to displace under any light conditions. |
| .8 | Employs both active and passive security measures. |
| .9 | Maintains control of movement within the CP. |

| MCO 3501.29 17 MAY 99 | |
|--------------------------|--|
| .10 | Locates bivouac areas and Helicopter Landing Zones (HLZ) to add depth to local security. |
| .11 | Maintains positive/reliable communication with both higher Command and subordinate units. |
| .12 | Sufficient communication means are allocated to permit operations to be controlled on the move and/or at two separate locations during displacement |
| .13 | Passes control forward only after the new CP is capable of assuming control and notifies higher, adjacent, supporting, |
| .14 | Displace the CP without losing control and without interrupting the progress of the attack or support to |
| .15 | Demonstrates the ability to monitor the progress of the |
| .16 | Subordinate units submit combat reports in a timely manner. |
| .17 | Compiles information from subordinates and related activities to prepare Situation Reports (SITREP) and other required |
| .18 | Coordinates the logistic support of all elements. |
| .19 | Establish a NBC control center with ability to sustain 24 hour operations, and operate a COC under NBC conditions, and establish a local NBC warning system. |
| EVALUATOR INST | <u>FRUCTIONS</u> : None. |
| KEY INDICATORS | <u>S</u> : None. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10A.01 | .06 CONDUCT COMBAT REPORTING |

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AA battalion is assigned in direct support of tactical The supported unit's SOP and OpOrd contain the required reports and their submission times. Additional logistic and/or administration reports may be required by the AAV unit's parent organization.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Utilizes supported units operations SOP to establish reporting procedures to higher headquarters. (KI) | required |
|-----|--|----------------|
| . 2 | The report, format, and submission type requirements and are uniform. | are understood |
| . 3 | AAV unit SOP details any additional reports required | for the |
| . 4 | Establish/utilize JWARN connectivity for NBC warning | and |
| | | |

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: Evaluator obtains a full listing of all required reports prior to initiation of his evaluation of the unit and ascertains that the supported unit requirements were available.

KEY INDICATORS:

REPORTS CONTROL

Ensure OpOrd or SOP stress brevity and include:

- Time of submission of required reports.
- Reports are submitted on "as required" basis.
- Report formats permit "exception only" reporting to facilitate brevity.
- Method of submission for reports and alternate means.

ENCLOSURE (1)

10-A-7

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10A.02 - AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS

| TASK: 10A.02.01 CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS |
|--|
| ${\hbox{\hbox{\it CONDITION}}}\colon$ The AA battalion is in support of a ground unit assigned amphibious assault. |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 Conducts planning. |
| .2 AAV representatives attend planning conference, as directed. |
| .3 Advises commander on shipping requirements and recommends methods of embarkation. |
| .4 Embarks AAVs. |
| .5 AAV unit commander coordinates with Amphibious Task Force (ATF) representatives on preparation of landing documents. |
| .6 Conducts ship-to-shore movement |
| EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATORS: |
| LANDING DOCUMENTS |
| Ensure landing documents include: |
| -Landing plan. |
| -Assault schedule. |
| -Landing craft/vehicle assignment table. |
| -Landing diagram. |
| -Wave control. |
| TASK: 10A.02.02 PREPARE FOR EMBARKATION |
| $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: AAV unit is tasked to support an amphibious assault. The plan is being developed by the supported unit based on the scheme of maneuver and Loading plan. |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 AAV representatives attend planning conference as directed. |
| .2 Advises commander on shipping requirements and recommends methods of embarkation. |

 $\underline{\text{EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS}}$: The evaluator must be familiar with the various Documents required for the completion of the embarkation plan contained in FMFM 4-2, Amphibious Embarkation.

KEY INDICATORS:

PLANNING CONFERENCE

Ensure that planning conference include:

- Embarkation of vehicles and crews.
- $\mbox{-}$ Embarkation of command, maintenance, and communication personnel requested to support vehicle commitments.
- Loading of supplies and equipment such as fuel, ammunition (both smoke and antipersonnel), and repair parts to support embarked vehicles.

MPS 10A.03 - SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE

TASK: 10A.03.01 PREPARE TO OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AA battalion is ordered to coordinate link-up of AAV supported units at designated assembly areas. The movements can be conducted under any light conditions. The unit is required to be task organized upon arrival in the assembly area, and be ready to embark Marines, their weapons, ammunition, and equipment.

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
|---------------------|---|
| .1 | Task organizes and assigns AAVs to units to be supported; provides their tentative locations and numbers of troops, weapons, ammunition, and supplies to be loaded. |
| .2 | Issue Bn movement order to subordinate AAV units. |
| .3 | Coordinates designated routes with the supported unit to resolve movement schedules, and identify known obstacles, location of friendly rear unit control points, the location of |
| .4 | Coordinates with the supported units Fire Support Center, a fire support plan, and receives frequencies and call signs of |
| .5 | Ensures liaison is complete between subordinate units and |
| .6 | Ensures details of vehicle markings are provided to the supported units in order for them to identify assigned |
| .7 | Ensures subordinate units link-up with supported units. |
| EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATO | RS: None. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10A.0 | 3.02 OCCUPY A BATTALION SUPPORT AREA (BSA) |
| CONDITION(S) | : The AA battalion will plan for, and conduct, occupation of |
| STANDARDS E | VAL: :Y; N; NE |
| .1 | Coordinates the location of BSA with supported and higher unit |
| .2 | Develops security plan for BSA. |
| .3 | Coordinates designated routes (See #4 from 10A.3.1). |
| .4 | Plans routes of march that offers the most cover and |
| .5 | Issue battalion movement order |
| .6 | Dispatches a quartering party to the supported unit to coordinate arrival at, and defense of, the assembly area. |
| .7 | Designates guides for assisting subordinate units to the assembly area. |
| | |

| .8 | Ensures planning for defensive posture during static periods enroute to assembly area. |
|----------------------|--|
| .9 | Establish NBC detection capability and NBC warning system. |
| EVALUATOR INS | STRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATOR | RS: None. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10A.03 | 3.03 SUPPORT FORWARD AAV UNITS FROM A BSA |
| | : The AA battalion H&S Company is configured into combat and ard deployed AAV units. |
| STANDARDS: I | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | Establishes Lines of Communication between supported unit and |
| .2 | Establishes tactical command and control center. |
| .3 | Dispatches liaison teams to CSS elements. |
| .4 | Establishes contact teams for forward deployment. |
| .5 | Provides security for forward deployed elements of the |
| .6 | Conducts secure convoy operations. |
| .7 | Coordinates rapid requests with liaison officers. |
| .8 | Establishes forward salvage points, Unit Maintenance Collection Points (UMCPs), and Repair and Replenishment Point |
| .9 | Plans to displace and establish forward BSA to support maneuver element's scheme of maneuver. |
| .10 | Is prepared to refit, rearm, refuel, and sustain forward elements including the Mine/Counter Mine (MCM) unit. |
| .11 | Conducts recovery operations |
| .12 | Conducts Battle Damage Assessment (BDA) and repairs forward |
| .13 | Establishes tactical radio communication with higher and subordinate units. |
| .14 | Maintain logistic status of forward deployed AAV units. |
| .15 | Maintain higher headquarters/adjacent tactical picture. |
| .16 | Provide operational decontamination capability, to include MOPP gear exchange and vehicle wash down. |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

| 17 MAY 99 |
|---|
| KEY INDICATORS: None. |
| TASK: 10A.03.04 COORDINATE MINE/COUNTER MINE (MCM) OPERATIONS |
| $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV battalion coordinates MCM platoon breaching of tactical operations, as requested by supported units. |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 Coordinates planning with higher headquarters. |
| .2 Coordinates employment with breach force element. |
| .3 Rearm/Refuel/Refit MCM platoon at established Refuel/Rearm |
| .4 Coordinates passage and link-up of MCM unit with supported units and breach force commander. |
| .5 Coordinates establishment of MCM routes and supporting fire. |
| .6 Plans amphibian breaching operations (Zero Wave), as required. |
| .7 Determine presence of chemical mines and take appropriate action before breach. |
| <u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u> : None. |
| <u>KEY INDICATORS</u> : |
| <u>DECON CASUALTIES</u> |
| Decon chemically contaminated casualties to the maximum extent possible prior to evacuation. |
| TASK: 10A.03.05 ENSURE CONTINUING ACTION BY MARINES ARE PERFORMED |
| $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AA battalion is tasked to support tactical operations conditions varying from full to limited visibility. |
| STANDARDS_: EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 Ensures implementation tactical discipline. (KI) |
| .2 Ensures/Demonstrates dispersion. |
| .3 Enforces employment of cover and concealment. |
| .4 Reacts to direct fires. |

ENCLOSURE (1)

.5 ____ Reacts to indirect fires.

.6 ____ Responds to enemy air threat.

.7 ____ Ensures AAV safety rules are implemented.

| .8 Ensure MOPP discipline is maintained and Marines react chemical attack | to |
|---|------------------|
| <u>KEY INDICATORS</u> : | |
| DISCIPLINE | |
| The following individual discipline must be adhered to: | |
| - Light. | |
| - Sound. | |
| - Sanitation. | |
| - Hazardous materials handling. | |
| TASK: 10A.03.06 CONDUCT CONSOLIDATION | |
| $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AA battalion has reached an objective, arrived defensive positions following an enemy counterattack. The battareceived an order to consolidate. | |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE | |
| .1 Conducts initial planning. | |
| .2 Develops a plan that takes full advantage of local and provides security. | terrain features |
| .3 Coordinates procedures for the receipt of replacement supplies, and equipment. | ent personnel, |
| .4 Coordinates CSS support activities and priorities | of support. |
| .5 Conducts a detailed briefing of the plan to all key | 7 |
| .6 Submits SITREPs to appropriate units. | |
| .7 Establishes communications with adjacent units. | |
| .8 Process casualties per unit SOP and in a timely man | nner. |
| .9 Process Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) per the SOP. | |
| .10 Redistribute personnel, supplies, and equipment t | o offset any |
| .11 Carry out replacement, resupply, maintenance, and service support activities, as time permits. | d other combat |
| .12 Displaces command and control facilities to control consolidation and to facilitate the conduct of fu | |

| .13 Submits reports to higher command, as required. |
|---|
| .14 Prepares for on-call missions. |
| VALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None. |
| EY INDICATORS: None. |
| ASK: 10A.03.07 CONDUCT CASUALTY EVACUATIONS |
| $\overline{	ext{ONDITION(S)}}$: The AA battalion is in support of tactical operations. re with the unit. |
| TANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 AAV unit has a medical evacuation plan in place. (KI) |
| .2 Bn establishes an aid station. |
| .3 Casualty reporting begins immediately through the chain of |
| .4 Wounded Marines' equipment is handled per AAV unit SOP. |
| .5 Establish procedures for chemically contaminated casualties. |

KEY INDICATORS:

MEDICAL EVACUATION PLAN

The following apply:

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

- The AAV litter kits are properly installed and serviceable, as required.
- Coordinate evacuation of post triage casualties.
- Marines dealing with casualties prior to arrival of corpsmen demonstrate emergency first aid knowledge in treatment for shock, fractures, penetrating wounds, and sucking chest wounds.
 - Marines tagged as lightly wound apply self-aid.
- Marines dealing with casualties are familiar with evacuation procedures, locations of medical facilities, and safe routes for evacuation.
- Marines who must be evacuated are transported to the treatment site in a tactically sound and expeditious manner with adequate on board medical assistance.

MPS 10A.04 - SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

TASK: 10A.04.01 CONDUCT RECOVERY OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The AA battalion is supporting the forward deployed AAV

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Conducts battle damage assessment and performs repairs, as |
|----|---|
| .2 | Coordinates recovery effort with the supported unit, to include the location of, and route to, the recovery site. |
| .3 | Ensures disabled vehicle's ammunition and/or equipment are successfully recovered/evacuated. |
| .4 | NBC contaminated equipment is recovered/evacuated. (KI) |

- .5 _____ Provide replacement vehicle(s), if tactically required.
- .6 ____ Ensure personnel are knowledgeable of AAV destruction methods when casualty vehicles are beyond recover/salvage.

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with the Tactical Exercise Commander, inserts sufficient vehicle casualty play into the tactical scenario to evaluate this task.

KEY INDICATORS:

The battalion staff will ensure the recovery crew:

- Coordinates with the supported unit to ensure familiarization with the situation and tactical control measures in effect.
- Identifies location and plans a route to vehicle/equipment.
- Locates vehicle/equipment without excessive searching.
- Ensures security augmentation, if tactically required.
- Adheres to safety regulations.
- Evacuates casualty AAV to CSSE when possible.

NBC contaminated recovery operations have the following additional requirements:

- Crews adopts MOPP 4 and buttons up recovery vehicle before entering contaminated area.
- Selects route that minimizes exposure.
- Rigs for evacuation.

- Recovers vehicle/equipment and evacuates it to the Equipment contamination Site (EDS).
- Assists EDS personnel in decontaminating the recovery vehicle.
- Evacuates to the appropriate maintenance/support activity.

TASK: 10A.04.02 CONDUCT SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

 $\frac{\texttt{CONDITION(S)}}{\texttt{CONDITION(S)}}: \text{ The AA battalion is tasked to support tactical operations} \\ \text{and/or on land. Initial planning and logistical planning has been completed, as} \\ \text{well as liaison with higher headquarters and CSSE. Sustainment operations are} \\ \text{to be conducted in all weather/light conditions. Final preparations for} \\ \text{supportability have been completed.} \\$

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Provides third, and when authorized, fourth echelon |
|-----|--|
| .2 | Supply and maintenance responsibilities are clearly |
| .3 | Trained unit maintenance personnel and/or maintenance contact teams are located well forward and readily available to the |
| .4 | Recovery, refueling, and resupply are conducted, as necessary. |
| .5 | Conducts Repair and Replacement Point operations. |
| .6 | Conducts Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP). |
| .7 | AAV Bn has verified and inspected packaged and prepared mount out blocks of 2nd and 3rd echelon repair parts to include |
| .8 | AAV Bn carries an operational block of supplies to include Pre-Expended Bin (PEB), Preventative Maintenance (PM), expendable materials, etc., for all equipment organic to the |
| .9 | Carries initial issue quantities of SECREPs for AAVs deployed. |
| .10 | Conduct supply and maintenance operations in an NBC |

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with the Tactical Exercise Commander (TEC), inserts sufficient logistic and maintenance requirements into the tactical scenario to provide for evaluation of this task.

KEY INDICATORS:

ORGANIZATIONAL MAINTENANCE

Ensure organizational maintenance is organized to accomplish the following:

- Make repairs as far forward as possible.
- Identify precise discrepancies of the vehicles and equipment to include specific parts and actions required.

- Provide necessary personnel, parts, tools, and equipment to affect repairs.
- Repair and return vehicles and equipment to the unit in a timely manner.
- Perform supply responsibilities.
- Conduct Battle Damage Assessment (BDA).
- Maintains inventory of technical publications related to organic equipment.

MPS 10A.05 - NBC DEFENSE OPERATIONS

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

TASK: 10A.05.01 PREPARE FOR NBC DEFENSE OPERATIONS

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: Threat forces have employed NBC munitions in the area destroying/disrupting operations and facilities. Due to the threat, passive and active defense measures must be used for survival of the AAV unit.

.1 ____ AAV unit possesses an SOP which outlines procedures for enemy NBC strikes and the reports.

.2 ____ All individual NBC defense equipment authorized by the unit Table of Equipment (T/E) is issued to each individual.

.3 ____ All unit NBC defense equipment authorized by T/E is operationally ready and distributed to designated and

.4 ____ Shortages are identified and replacement actions are taken.

.5 ____ Decontamination equipment (mops, brooms, shovels, rags, etc.) and bulk decontaminates are assembled and prepared for ready transport to a decontamination area.

.6 ____ Decontamination equipment is prepared for use.

.7 ____ MOPP level is established by the supported unit and AAV personnel are at or above required MOPP level.

.8 ____ Company/Platoon commanders are able to utilize the appropriate detectors and report the readings to higher headquarters.

.9 ____ Unit leaders thoroughly understand MOPP for the control of exposure of personnel to chemical hazards.

.10 ____ Marines properly identify NATO or threat NBC contamination

.11 ____ Maximizes the utilization of terrain features for cover, concealment, and topographic shielding from NBC attack.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Provide the unit information to expect an imminent nuclear attack by the enemy, and integrate NBC scenarios with normal missions. Evaluator(s) should be school trained in the area of NBC defense (MOS 57XX) or be thoroughly trained in this area as part of evaluators' school.

KEY INDICATORS: None

TASK: 10A.05.02 PREPARE FOR NUCLEAR ATTACK

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: AAV unit is informed that nuclear weapons have been used of in the theater of operations.

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
|----------------------------|---|
| .1 | Subordinate/Displaced elements are alerted (if applicable). |
| .2 | Continues the mission while implementing actions to minimize casualties and damage. |
| .3 | Unit implements protective measures, as directed by higher command element, consistent with the mission. |
| .4 | Personnel minimizes exposure by rolling down sleeves, buttoning collars, and wearing additional clothing equal to a |
| .5 | Personnel take cover in fighting holes, bushes, armored vehicles, existing shelters (basements, culverts, caves, |
| .6 | External electronic equipment is protected from Electromagnetic Pulse (EMP) and Transient Radiation Effects on |
| .7 | Periodic monitoring is initiated using the appropriate radiac |
| .8 | Vehicles are placed behind masking terrain. |
| .9 | All loose items, flammable/explosive items, food and water, which are not stored in AAVs, are secured and protected from |
| .10 | Marines are familiar with standard first aid procedures to provide self/buddy aid for nuclear blast and thermal effects. |
| EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATOR | RS: Turn all electronic equipment off in accordance with SOP. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10A.0 | 5.03 RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK |
| CONDITION(S) by other app: | : Nuclear attack is simulated by the detonation of an simulator or ropriate means. |
| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | Upon recognizing the attack, all personnel take immediate action to shield themselves from blast/heat of detonation. |
| .2 | Chain of command and communications are maintained or reestablished. AAVs resume mission, if possible. |
| .3 | NBC-1 initial and follow-up reports, as required, are rapidly submitted to the supported command element by personnel designated or responsible for collecting the information. Reliable and complete reports are rapidly forwarded by secure |
| .4 | Casualties are given first aid and are evacuated to a medical treatment station as the mission permits; fatalities are evacuated to a graves registration collection point. |

| .5 | Damage assessment is submitted by secure means to the supported headquarters per SOP. |
|--|--|
| .6 | Continuous monitoring is initiated using the appropriate |
| blast, heat, be assessed be receivers/tra | STRUCTIONS: Evaluator will assess constructive casualties due to radiation, and ElectroMagnetic Pulse (EMP). EMP causalities will by the evaluator for all communications systems (antennas, ansmitiers) that are exposed (not in a covered or hardened icle) during the simulated nuclear detonation. RS: None. |
| TASK: 10A 0 | 5.04 RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR BLAST |
| CONDITION(S) the predicted substitute, once every 12 after the def unit within 1 | A surface nuclear detonation has occurred. The AAV unit within d fallout zone. An M5A2 radiological fallout predictor, or is available. The unit gets effective downwind messages at least 2 hours. NBC-2 report is furnished to the unit about 15 minutes conation or prepared by the unit; NBC-3 report is prepared by the 15 minutes after the detonation; NBC-5 report and/or contamination rovided about four hours after the detonation. |
| STANDARDS: 1 | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | Unit mission is performed concurrently with all other actions. |
| .2 | Unit is advised of estimated time of fallout arrival, and subordinate units are notified. |
| .3 | Continuous monitoring is maintained using the appropriate |
| .4 | Equipment, munitions, Petroleum, Oil, and Lubricants (POL), food, and water are protected from fallout. |
| .5 | Personnel takes protective measures to minimize fallout |
| .6 | NBC-4 reports are forwarded, as required, to the supported command element by secure means. |
| .7 | Unit total dose information is measured using the appropriate radiac equipment and reported to the supported command element using available secure means. |
| .8 | Exposure is minimized while the command element determines if relocation to a clean area is necessary. |
| .9 | Personnel are able to handle and provide first aid treatment to casualties in an nuclear environment. |
| .10 | Casualties and fatalities are assessed. |
| .11 | Vehicles are assessed for damage. |
| | |

.12 ____ Determine Operational Exposure Guidance (OEG). Unit conducts survey mission as required and forwarded NBC-4 reports, and completed detailed fallout prediction.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Commander is advised of estimated time of fallout arrival.

KEY INDICATORS:

PERSONNEL PROTECTIVE MEASURES

Personnel take the following measures to minimize fallout effects:

- Place a wet cloth across mouth and nose.
- Make the AAV as air tight as possible.
- Utilize outer garments, such as ponchos, to the maximum extent possible.
- Keep the inside of the vehicle as clean as possible.

TASK: 10A.05.05 PERFORM RADIOLOGICAL DECONTAMINATION

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: Fallout has ceased, and personnel and equipment are hazard to personnel do not allow time for the radiation to decay to a minimum level. Time and tactical situation permits operational decontamination. Decontamination support is not available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Decontamination priorities are established. |
|-----|---|
| .2 | A operational decontamination point is established out of the contaminated area. |
| .3 | Movement to the decontaminated site is controlled and is |
| .4 | Decontamination personnel wear appropriate protective clothing and equipment. |
| .5 | Decontamination equipment and vehicles using appropriate expedient devices.(KI) |
| .6 | Contaminated area is marked with NATO standard NBC markers. |
| .7 | Adequacy of decontamination is determined utilizing the appropriate radiac equipment. |
| .8 | Contaminated materials are discarded according to tactical SOP, marked as contaminated, and location is provided to |
| .9 | Decontamination personnel are decontaminated, as necessary. |
| .10 | Operational Exposure Guidance (OEG) is not exceeded. |
| | |

| MCO 3501.29 17 MAY 99 | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| .11 | Total dose information for the operational decontamination area is recorded and reported utilizing the appropriate radiac equipment to higher headquarters. |
| .12 | Runoff from decon site is controlled, and location of decon site is reported to higher headquarters. |
| EVALUATOR INST | <u>RUCTIONS</u> : None. |
| KEY INDICATORS | <u>1</u> : |
| | EXPEDIENT DECONTAMINATION |
| If the contami | numb for expedient decontamination is wet on wet and dry on dry. In an is wet, utilize buckets of water or if possible, splash the ody of water. If the contaminant is dry, simply brush it off the personnel. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10A.05. | 06 CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA |
| <pre>CONDITION(S): area.</pre> | The tactical situation forces the AAV unit to cross a contaminated |
| STANDARDS: EV | VAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 R | econnaissance element is provided the turnback dose rate. |
| .2 R | econnaissance element is dispatched to reconnoiter new area. |
| | Init crosses expected contaminated area while employing contamination avoidance techniques. |
| .4 0 | perational Exposure Guidance (OEG) is not exceeded. |

.4 ____ Operational Exposure Guidance (OEG) is not exceeded.

.5 ____ After clearing the contaminated area, the degree of personnel and equipment contamination is determined, using the

6 ____ Decontamination priorities are established and performed, as

.7 ____ Unit total dose information is recorded, using, appropriate radiac equipment and reported to higher headquarters.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator will provide the AAV unit with turnback and dose rates, if higher headquarters does not provide it.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 10A.05.07 PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: Unit receives a friendly nuclear STRIKWARN per FM 21-40, 6-15. The AAV unit is within Minimum Safe Distance (MSD) 2 to 3.

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE | |
|---|--|--|
| .1 | Applies the STRIKWARN to the situation map within 5 minutes after message receipt. | |
| .2 | Pertinent information regarding the planned detonation (time of burst, ground zero, fallout coverage, MSD, etc.) is | |
| .3 | Unit is advised of its' vulnerability to the burst (within MSD 1, 2 or 3) and residual contamination (within predicated | |
| .4 | Unit is advised of the measures needed to prevent casualties, damage, and extended interference with the mission. | |
| .5 | Unit implements protective measures, as directed by higher headquarters, consistent with the mission. | |
| .6 | Personnel minimizes exposure by rolling down sleeves, buttoning collars, and wearing additional clothing equal to a | |
| .7 | Personnel take cover in fighting holes, bunkers, armored vehicles, existing shelters (basements, culverts, caves, tunnels, etc.), or lie prone on open ground. | |
| .8 | Vehicles are placed behind making terrain. | |
| .9 | External electronic equipment is protected from Electromagnetic Pulse (EMP) and Transient Radiation Effects on | |
| .10 | All loose items (small weapons, tools etc.) and highly flammable/explosive items (POL, propellants, etc.) are placed | |
| .11 | Acknowledges the warning before the expected time of burst. All attachments have been warned and protective measures | |
| <u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u> : Evaluator simulates nuclear detonation with an artillery blast simulator, or informs the unit that nuclear blast has occurred. Evaluator assesses casualties and damage to unprotected personnel and equipment. | | |
| KEY INDICATOR | RS: Turn off all electronic equipment in accordance with unit SOP. | |
| TASK: 10A.05.08 PREPARE FOR CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK | | |
| $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: AAV unit is informed that chemical weapons have been used of operations and that a chemical attack is imminent. | | |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE | | |
| .1 | Uses a chemical defense SOP which addresses chemical defense/decontamination procedures. | |
| .2 | All elements, if applicable, are directed to increase MOPP consistent with mission, temperature, work rate, and | |

| .3 | Mission-essential tasks that require a high degree of manual dexterity or physical strength, and are difficult to perform in MOPP 4 are identified. Alternate methods, such as allowing more time, rotating, or assigning additional personnel, are | |
|---|---|--|
| .4 | Marines identify criteria for and demonstrate the capabilities for donning the protective mask and chemical protective | |
| .5 | The buddy system is established to facilitate monitoring/treatment for chemical agent poisoning and | |
| .6 | Continues the mission while implementing all actions to minimize casualties and damage. | |
| .7 | Portions of essential equipment, munitions, POL, food, and water supplies that cannot be placed in a shelter are covered with expendable or readily decontaminated tarps, shelter | |
| .8 | Detector paper is affixed to visible, horizontal surfaces of protective clothing and on equipment, munitions, etc. | |
| .9 | Decontamination kits are checked, individuals have complete decontamination kits and there is an available water source | |
| .10 | Potential decontamination sites are reported to higher | |
| .11 | Available chemical agent alarms are set up and monitored. | |
| .12 | Protective NBC equipment and supplies are properly used and maintained in a high state of serviceability. | |
| .13 | Marines demonstrate a knowledge of chemical agent symptoms. | |
| .14 | Radio operators pass and receive alter/warning messages via headset while wearing the protective mask. | |
| .15 | Establish an identification system while in MOPP. | |
| EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. | |
| KEY INDICATO | RS: None. | |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10A.0 | 5.09 RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK | |
| CONDITION(S): AAV unit is subjected to a chemical agent attack. | | |
| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE | |
| .1 | Upon hearing a chemical alarm, personnel take immediate protective measures, and pass the alarm followed by treatment/decontamination of casualties. | |
| ENCLOSURE (1 |) | |

| . 2 | artillery, rocket, or air attack/over flight or upon perceiving a suspicious odor, airborne droplets/mist, or smoke |
|-----|--|
| .3 | Marines do not unmask until given the command "UNMASK" by their immediate commander. (KI) |
| .4 | AAV unit is able to perform mission for at least four hours while in MOPP 4. |
| .5 | Type of chemical agent is identified utilizing the M256 kit cam or M8 paper, and reported to the supported unit. |
| .6 | Contamination is located and marked with NATO standard |
| .7 | Location and type of contamination is reported to the supported command element. |
| .8 | Unit determines if immediate relocation to a clean area is necessary or possible, consistent with the mission. |
| .9 | Priorities are determined for decontamination. Decontamination support is requested, if required. |
| .10 | WIAs are decontaminated, wrapped, and marked as contaminated if decontamination is not performed, and evacuated. Medical treatment facilities are alerted. |
| .11 | KIAs are wrapped, marked as contaminated, and evacuated as mission permits. Graves registration collection point is |
| .12 | Unmasking procedure is followed. |
| .13 | WIAs are evacuated to the medical treatment facility as |
| .14 | KIAs are evacuated to the graves registration collection point as mission permits. |
| .15 | Detector kits are serviced and returned to operation. |
| .16 | Expended chemical defense items are replaced, as required. |
| .17 | CO/OIC adjusts MOPP level, as required. |
| .18 | Unit personnel are able to handle and provide first aid treatment to casualties in a chemical environment. |

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: Training site should support the type of activities being conducted and permit safe use of simulators and devices. Selected personnel are presented decontamination training kits and first aid treatment training devices to "treat designated casualties". Every attempt must be made to provided a realistic situation through devices, scenarios, or other aids developed through innovation. The key to a thorough evaluation is a realistic, believable, well-supported situation imposed by the trainer/evaluator.

KEY INDICATORS:

CHEMICAL CASUALTIES

Chemical casualties are described as:

- Personnel without mask and hood within arms reach, without decontamination kits, or not wearing chemical protective clothing.
- Personnel not taking immediate corrective actions upon perceiving the attack, hearing a chemical agent alarm, being ordered to mask, or using incorrect masking procedures (not masking within nine seconds), or making incorrect use of decontamination kits/first aid treatment items.
- Marines who unmask or otherwise assume a lesser degree of MOPP without being authorized to do so.

UNMASKING PROCEDURES

The unmasking procedures outlined below are to be initiated after being notified to do so by higher headquarters or the immediate commander. They show procedures to be used with and without the M256 chemical agent detector kit.

- 1. Initiate unmasking when a detector kit is available:
- a. Use the detector at different points in the perimeter to determine the presence of chemical agents.
- b. If no agent is detected the senior Marine present will designate two or three individual Marines to unmask for five minutes and then remask for 10 minutes. This is to be done in the shade. Weapons are removed from individuals prior to unmasking.
- c. If no symptoms appear, unmasking unit will accomplish this by 1/3 on the unit intervals. However, they remain alert for symptoms.
- 2. When no detector kit is available, the following unmasking procedures will be adhered to:
- a. Two or three Marines take a deep breath, hold it, keep their eyes open, break the seal on their tasks and hold the masks open for 15 seconds.
- b. With masks resealed and cleared, the Marines are checked for symptoms for the next 10 minutes. This occurs in the shade.
- c. If no symptoms appear, the same Marines break the seal of their masks, take two or three deep breaths, then clear and reseal their masks. Weapons are removed from the individuals prior to unmasking.
- d. If after 10 minutes no symptoms have appeared, the same Marine unmask for five minutes, and then remask.
- If after 10 more minutes no symptoms have appeared, the rest of the unit may unmask. However, they remain alert for symptoms.

NOTE: After each unmasking, always notify higher headquarters.

TASK: 10A.05.10 PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: Personnel and equipment have been contaminated by a Emergency decontamination has been accomplished. Time is not available for complete decontamination. The hazard is such that operational decontamination is required. All personnel are maintaining a maximum MOPP.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Personnel decontaminate individual weapons and equipment using appropriate decontamination kits. |
|----|---|
| .2 | Extent of decontamination is determined and decontamination priorities are established. |
| .3 | Contaminated protective covers are removed, decontaminated, or |
| .4 | Decontamination procedures are appropriate to items being decontaminated. (KI) |
| .5 | Conducts, operational decontamination of equipment and vehicles using appropriate expedient devices. |
| .6 | Adequacy of decontamination is determined. If inadequate: |
| | a. Procedures are repeated. |
| | b. Decontamination support is requested. |
| | c. Risk of using equipment is accepted. |
| .7 | Contaminated materials are discarded according to tactical SOP, marked as contaminated, and location provided to higher |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

.8 ____ OIC reduces MOPP level, if required.

KEY INDICATORS:

DECONTAMINATION PROCEDURES

- 1. Initial decontamination of unit equipment, vehicles, and crew-served weapons may be accomplished by:
- a. Removing all gross liquid contamination with sticks or other improvised devices which are buried after use.
- b. Apparatuses filled with the appropriate decontamination agents to spray areas frequently used or touched. (Water is used to simulate DS2 in a training environment)
- 2. Contaminated items that may need special decontamination treatment are:
- a. POL, food, and water containers and munitions. These are washed with soapy water, rinsed, and thoroughly air dried.

- b. Communications equipment and other electronic equipment. Decontaminated with hot air, by weathering, or all metal parts are wiped with rags soaked DS2 (water is used for training purpose).
- c. Optical instruments are blotted with rags and then wiped with lens cleaning solution or organic solvent.
- 3. Adequacy of decontamination is determined using the chemical agent detector it. If contamination is still present, decontaminate again.
- 4. Operational decontamination procedures can be developed in the vehicle wash down phase and the MOPP gear exchange phase.
- a. Vehicle wash down phase: Vehicle washdown should be completed within an hour for best results. If available, the most expedient manner for AAVs would be to "splash" a body of water such as a river or the ocean. The tactical situation may require a decontamination apparatus be requested from higher headquarters.
- b. MOPP gear exchange phase: MOPP gear exchange is the exchange of protective clothing as soon as the tactical situation permits or within 6 hours of being contaminated. Proper security must be arranged. The buddy system is utilized. The area needs to be continually checked to be sure it is free of contamination. Once unmasking procedures have been completed, personnel may unmask to provide relief from the MOPP IV posture.

TASK: 10A.05.11 COORDINATE FOR THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION OF EQUIPMENT

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: AAV unit equipment has been contaminated by a chemical decontamination has been accomplished. Time is now available for a thorough decontamination and support is available upon request.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Coordination is made with the decontamination unit as to time of arrival, supplies, equipment, and personnel to be furnished by the contaminated unit, and the estimated time of completion |
|--------------|--|
| .2 | Requests and receives route clearance to Detailed Troop Decontamination/Detailed Equipment Decontamination (DTD/DED) assembly area. Advance party (personnel to augment decontamination operation and establish security) is |
| .3 | Main body arrives at DTD/DED assembly area and organizes for |
| .4 | Decontamination begins as scheduled. |
| .5 | Unit reorganizes in a clean area upwind of residual contamination and prepares for resumption of mission. |
| .6 | CO/OIC adjusts MOPP level, as required. |
| EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATO | RS: None. |
| ENCLOSURE (1 |) |

SECTION 10B

ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN COMPANY

INDEX OF TASKS

| | | | | | PAGE |
|-----|-----|--------------|-------------------|---|---------|
| MPS | 10B | .01 - | ASSIGNMENT | TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS | |
| | 1) | TASK | 10B.01.01 | CONDUCT INITIAL PLANNING | 10-B-1 |
| | 2) | TASK | 10B.01.02 | RESPOND TO SUPPORTED UNIT | 10-B-2 |
| | 3) | TASK | 10B.01.03 | COORDINATE INTELLIGENCE FUNCTIONS | 10-B-3 |
| | 4) | TASK | 10B.01.04 | COORDINATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING | 10-B-4 |
| | 5) | TASK | 10B.01.05 | COORDINATE LOGISTICS PLANNING | 10-B-5 |
| | 6) | TASK | 10B.01.06 | CONDUCT COMBAT REPORTING | 10-B-6 |
| MPS | 10B | .02 - | AMPHIBIOUS | <u>OPERATIONS</u> | |
| | 1) | TASK | 10B.02.01 | CONDUCT PLANNING | 10-B-8 |
| | 2) | TASK | 10B.02.02 | PREPARES FOR EMBARKATION | 10-B-9 |
| | 3) | TASK | 10B.02.03 | EMBARK AAVS | 10-B-10 |
| | 4) | TASK | 10B.02.04 | PREPARE FOR DEBARKATION | 10-B-10 |
| | 5) | TASK MOVE | 10B.02.05 MENT | CONDUCT DEBARKATION AND SHIP-TO-SHORE | 10-B-11 |
| MPS | 10B | .03 - | SUBSEQUENT | OPERATIONS ASHORE | |
| | 1) | TASK | 10B.03.01 | PREPARE TO OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA | 10-B-14 |
| | 2) | TASK AREA | 10B.03.02 | PREPARE FOR TACTICAL MOVEMENT FROM ASSEMBLY | 10-B-14 |
| | 3) | TASK | 10B.03.03 | EMPLOY MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES | 10-B-17 |
| | 4) | TASK | 10B.03.04 | CONDUCT TACTICAL HALT | 10-B-18 |
| | 5) | TASK | 10B.03.06 | PLAN AN IN-STRIDE BREACH | 10-B-18 |
| | 6) | TASK | 10B.03.07 | CONDUCT BREACHING OF A MINEFIELD | 10-B-19 |
| | 7) | TASK | 10B.03.08 | CONDUCT NIGHT OPERATIONS | 10-B-20 |
| | 8) | TASK | 10B.03.09 | ESTABLISH DEFENSIVE POSITIONS | 10-B-20 |
| | 9) | TASK | 10B.03.10 | EMPLOYMENT OF AAV WEAPONS IN THE DEFENSE | 10-B-22 |
| | 10) | TASK | 10B.03.11 | EMPLOYMENT OF SMOKE SCREEN | 10-B-23 |
| | 11) | | | SUPPORTS COMMAND AND CONTROL FROM ASSAULT ND VEHICLE, AAVC7A1 | 10-B-24 |

| MPS | 10B | .04 - | SUPPLY AND | MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS | |
|-----|-----|---------------|----------------------|--|---------|
| | 1) | TASK | 10B.04.01 | CONDUCT RECOVERY OPERATIONS | 10-B-25 |
| | 2) | TASK | 10B.04.02 | CONDUCT SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS | 10-B-26 |
| MPS | 10B | .05 - | CONTINUING | ACTIONS BY MARINES | |
| | 1) | TASK | 10B.05.01 | IMPLEMENTING DISCIPLINE | 10-B-28 |
| | 2) | TASK | 10B.05.02 | CONDUCT PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE | 10-B-28 |
| | 3) | TASK | 10B.05.03 | DEMONSTRATE DISPERSION | 10-B-29 |
| | 4) | TASK | 10B.05.04 | EMPLOY COVER AND CONCEALMENT | 10-B-30 |
| | 5) | TASK | 10B.05.05 | REACT TO DIRECT FIRES | 10-B-31 |
| | 6) | TASK | 10B.05.06 | REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE | 10-B-31 |
| | 7) | TASK | 10B.05.07 | ESTABLISHES TACTICAL RADIO COMMUNICATION | 10-B-32 |
| | 8) | TASK | 10B.05.08 | RESPOND TO ENEMY ELECTRONIC WARFARE (EW) | 10-B-33 |
| | 9) | TASK | 10B.05.09 | RESPOND TO ENEMY AIR THREAT | 10-B-34 |
| | 10) | TASK | 10B.05.10 | PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR | 10-B-34 |
| | 11) | TASK | 10B.05.11 | PROCESS CASUALTY EVACUATIONS | 10-B-27 |
| | 12) | | 10B.05.12 AUTIONS | IMPLEMENTING AAV OPERATIONAL SAFETY | 10-в-38 |
| MPS | 10B | .06 - | NBC OPERAT | IONS | |
| | 1) | TASK | 10B.06.01 | PREPARE FOR NBC OPERATIONS | 10-B-40 |
| | 2) | TASK | 10B.06.02 | PREPARE FOR NUCLEAR ATTACK | 10-B-40 |
| | 3) | TASK ATTA | 10B.06.03 CK | RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR | 10-B-41 |
| | 4) | TASK BLAST | 10B.06.04 Г | RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR | 10-в-42 |
| | 5) | TASK | 10B.06.05 | PERFORM RADIOLOGICAL DECONTAMINATION | 10-B-43 |
| | 6) | TASK | 10B.06.06 | CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA | 10-B-44 |
| | 7) | TASK | 10B.06.07 | PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE | 10-B-44 |
| | 8) | TASK | 10B.06.08 | PREPARE FOR CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK | 10-B-45 |
| | 9) | TASK | 10B.06.09 | RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK | 10-B-46 |
| | 10) | TASK | 10B.06.10 | PERFORM PARTIAL DECONTAMINATION | 10-в-49 |
| | 11) | | 10B.06.11 PMENT | COORDINATE FOR COMPLETE DECONTAMINATION OF | 10-B-50 |

MPS 10B.01 - ASSIGNMENT TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS

TASK: 10B.01.01 CONDUCT INITIAL PLANNING

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}\colon$ The AAV company is given the mission to support tactical either as an attached unit or in direct support.

| .1 | AAV company commander immediately reports to the supported commander for planning as a special staff officer. |
|-----|---|
| .2 | Conducts analysis of supported unit's mission as part of staff |
| .3 | Company staff demonstrates effective use of planning time. |
| . 4 | Obtains intelligence data from supported unit on the enemy, the area of operation, and the weather. |
| .5 | Conducts Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) as special officer to include detailed threat and terrain analysis (maximize use of all available intelligence |
| .6 | Incorporates Operational Risk Management (ORM) into planning. |
| .7 | Assists in the development of courses of action as special staff officer. (KI) |
| .8 | Develops an AAV estimate of supportability as part of course of action development. |
| .9 | Issues a warning order to subordinate. |
| .10 | Conducts a leaders reconnaissance with both the supported unit and other supporting element leaders to ensure AAVs are fully integrated into the supported unit's plan. |
| .11 | As special staff officer, AAV commander develops appropriate plans after supported commander selects course of action. |
| | AAV company commander attends the issuance of the supported unit's five paragraph order. |
| .13 | AAV unit commander issues an operations order. |
| .14 | AAV Company CO establishes procedures and reports all changes in combat readiness to the supported unit and parent unit, if |
| .15 | Company staff coordinates all maintenance, recovery, and logistic requirements of AAV unit and establishes appropriate support arrangements. (KI |
| .16 | Company coordinates with the supported unit's communications officer to ensure frequencies are allocated that and the AAV unit possess the correct key lists, edition numbers, Net IDs, and FH data |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The focus of this task is on the AAV company commander as he fulfills his basic responsibilities to the supported unit. The evaluator should note that some of the requirements are one time actions and some are repetitive actions that will reoccur as the tactical situation changes.

KEY INDICATORS:

TIME MANAGEMENT

Ensure commanders allocate 2/3 of available time for planning and preparation by subordinate units. Time is allocated at all levels. In order to fulfill requirements, commanders manage available time to ensure that appropriate rest (sleep) periods are available (tactical situation permitting) in order to ensure that peak efficiency and alertness is maintained.

OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)

Ensure commanders utilize the five step ORM process, per MCO 3500.27 in their planning which includes: identify hazards, assess hazards, make risk decisions, implement controls, and supervise.

TYPES OF SUPPORT

Ensure that the type of support to be provided is determined for logistical purposes. In direct support, the parent unit is responsible for logistical needs. If attached, the supported unit is responsible for logistical needs. The third category, general support, denotes that the AAV unit is supporting the entire force without priority to any given element. In general support, the parent command retains command, control and logistics responsibility. The support arrangements must feasibly support the mission and address all equipment organic to the unit.

ROUTES/AXIS OF ADVANCE

Ensure that routes to be followed are carefully analyzed to include the following factors:

- Cover and concealment.
- Overwatch positions.
- Likely enemy ATGM and armor positions.
- Areas requiring dismounted occupation before exposing.
- Suitable approaches to objectives, withdrawal routes, and natural barriers/obstacles.
- Minefields and obstacles.
- Bridges and river crossing sites.
- Dust signature areas and rubble in built-up areas.

TASK: 10B.01.02 RESPOND TO SUPPORTED UNIT

| STANDARDS: I | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
|---------------|---|
| .1 | ${\tt AAV}$ company provides input from the ${\tt AAV}$ unit SOP for mechanized and waterborne operations. |
| .2 | Company staff complies with the supported unit's operation |
| .3 | Company responds immediately to orders issued by the supported unit command element. |
| .4 | Company enters tactical and command nets of the supported unit command element per the operations order. |
| .5 | Company staff provides input to the supported unit, consistent with changing tactical requirements concerning AAV |
| .6 | Company submits operational reports, per the operations order in a timely manner. |
| | STRUCTIONS: The evaluator determines when the AAV company received supported unit's operations SOP. |
| KEY INDICATOR | RS: None. |
| CONDITION(S) | 1.03 COORDINATE INTELLIGENCE FUNCTIONS The AAV company is assigned the mission to support The supported S-2 section fully capable of providing intelligence support to the |
| STANDARDS: I | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | Company uses proper procedures for handling and safeguarding intelligence matters, and addresses interoperability with |
| | Company staff stresses intelligence awareness for all assigned personnel. (KI) |
| .3 | Company staff ensures intelligence information is disseminated to subordinate elements. |
| .4 | Company is aware of the supported unit's Essential Elements of Information (EEIs). |
| .5 | Company knows the procedures to be used in handling EPWS (See Task 10E.5.10 PROCESS PRISONERS OF WAR). |

ENCLOSURE (1)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

INTELLIGENCE AWARENESS

Intelligence awareness includes:

- Knowledge of the collection means available, both friendly and enemy.
- Understanding of intelligence capabilities and limitations.
- Emphasis on OPSEC at all levels.
- Rapid reporting of raw combat information.
- Exploitation of information gleaned from EPWS.
- Development of relevant EEIs and OIRs.

TASK: 10B.01.04 COORDINATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AAV company is assigned the mission to support The supported unit is conducting communications planning for all elements. The enemy has the ability to conduct ESM and ECM operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Company commander ensures coordination with supported unit's communications officer. |
|-----|--|
| .2 | Company staff identifies all communications nets required. |
| .3 | Company staff ensures an adequate number of frequencies are |
| .4 | Company commander or representative plans for communications redundancy, simplicity, and brevity. |
| .5 | Company commander or his representative plans for the use of communications procedures contained in the supported unit's SOP or prearranged signals and other visual means which allow |
| .6 | Company identifies any interoperability problems. |
| .7 | Commander stresses communication security awareness for all |
| .8 | Company staff ensures the communications plan reflects secure voice equipment, correct key lists and edition numbers, and verifies the AAV unit has them. |
| .9 | Company stresses use of wire communications when appropriate in static or defensive positions. |
| .10 | The company staff provides the supported unit's staff and communications personnel with AAV-7Al briefing/training. |

| .11 | Company personnel | demonstrates | а | knowledge | of | alternate |
|-----|-------------------|--------------|---|-----------|----|-----------|
| | communications me | thods. (KI) | | | | |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None

KEY INDICATORS:

ALTERNATE COMMUNICATIONS

The company personnel must:

- Demonstrate awareness of communications capabilities and limitations during planning.
- Have the equipment and skill to erect expedient antenna systems, utilize hand/arm signals, and lay wire when appropriate.
 - Have full cognizance of communications security importance.

TASK: 10B.01.05 COORDINATE LOGISTICS PLANNING

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | AAV company commander ensures liaison with the supported unit's $S-4$ immediately upon receipt of the mission. |
|----|---|
| .2 | The AAV company commander, or his representative, identifies AAV Combat Service Support (CSS) requirements to the supported unit S-4 or parent unit during the planning phase. |
| .3 | Coordinates prescribed loads established by the supported |
| .4 | The AAV company commander ensures vehicle recovery procedures are established. |
| .5 | The company commander determines availability of AAV company logistics and support vehicles, and informs the supported unit or parent unit, as required. (KI) |
| .6 | The company staff ensures emergency resupply procedures are |
| .7 | The company commander determines which CSS reports are required and submits them as designated. |
| .8 | Liaison is established with the MAGTF CSS element, or parent command, as required for higher level logistic support requirements not within the capability of the supported unit. |

.9 ____ The company staff establishes a system to rapidly and correctly identify required repair parts and the procedures to request them through the appropriate supporting unit.

 $\underline{\text{EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS}}\colon$ Evaluator examines the company performance throughout all phases of operations.

KEY INDICATORS:

LOGISTIC SUPPORT

Ensure the AAV unit SOP covers:

- Procedures for requesting support when in either a general or direct support role.
- Request formats.
- Standardized loads for resupply.
- Specific procedures for recovery operations.
- Procedure for third echelon maintenance under field conditions.
- Procedure for replacement of major end items.
- Ensure the supported unit is briefed on logistic requirements:

Support requirements include:

- Equipment density list with all assets submitted.
- AAV unit logistics availability to include equipment status, PEB Class 9 parts, and expendable materials on hand. Additional consideration should be given to Equipment Repair Order (ERO)/ERO Shopping List (EROSLs), publications, calibration, and preventive maintenance schedules.

TASK: 10B.01.06 CONDUCT COMBAT REPORTING

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AAV company is assigned in direct support of tactical The supported unit's SOP and OpOrd contain the required reports and their submission times. Additional logistic and/or administration reports may be required by the AAV company's parent organization.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The company submits reports per the supported unit's |
|-----|---|
| .2 | The type report, format, and submission requirements are understood by company staff. |
| .3 | AAV unit SOP details any additional reports required to the parent organization. |
| . 4 | All required reports are submitted on time and are complete. |

ENCLOSURE (1)

10-B-6

 ${\color{red} \underline{EVALUATOR\ INSTRUCTIONS}}\colon$ Evaluator obtains a full listing of all required reports prior to initiation of his evaluation of the unit, and ascertains that the supported unit requirements were available.

KEY INDICATORS:

REPORTS CONTROL:

Ensure OpOrd SOP stress brevity and include the following:

- Time of submission of required reports.
- Reports are submitted on "as required" basis.
- Report formats permit "exception only" reporting to facilitate brevity.
- Method of submission for reports and alternate means.

MPS 10B.02 - AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS

TASK: 10B.02.01 CONDUCT PLANNING

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV company is in direct support of a ground unit mission to conduct an amphibious assault. The AAV company has begun detailed planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE .1 ____ The company commander reports to the supported unit commander, attends the initial briefing, and receives the commander's _ The company staff performs an analysis of the supported unit .3 ____ The company commander or his representative requests intelligence information, serial photography, and any special topographic products from the S-2. .4 ____ The AAV commander, or representative, conducts an analysis of the landing beaches to include: hydrography, prevailing surf conditions, tides and currents, trafficability of the beach, exits, and the number, type and strength of enemy beach .5 $_$ The company commander, as a special staff officer, conducts Interoperability Planning System to include detailed analysis of threat, terrain, and surf utilizing all available intel The company commander prepares an AAV estimate of .7 ____ The company commander assists the supported unit in the preparation of planning documents. .8 ____ The company commander makes recommendations on AAV utilization during the ship-to-shore movements to include formations, tactics and techniques, timing of AAV waves, mine clearance, and transit plan of AAVs through cleared lanes. __ The company commander coordinates AAV participation during the conduct of rehearsals. ___ The company commander coordinates the details of organization and embarkation of AAVs to various classes of shipping. .11 ____ All aspects of AAV employment are coordinated with naval control groups and ATF ships involved. .12 ____ Company staff determines maintenance requirements for AAVs, to include recommended system for maintenance, location of maintenance personnel and equipment, phasing ashore of spare parts, and estimates of breakdown rates. .13 ____ The company staff determines requirements of AAVs for fuel, oil, and other lubricants during operations ashore, and coordinates them with the supported unit S-4 and parent command.

| .14 | The company coordinates for the employment of signals, marking devices, Global Positioning System, etc., for AAV control during night landings and operations ashore (e.g. |
|-----------------------|--|
| .15 | The company commander ensures enforcement of safety requirements for embarking in AAVs and recommends safety training programs for the unit to be embarked. |
| .16 | The company commander plans for the assignment of AAV company liaison personnel to the CSSE, as required. |
| .17 | The company commander plans with subordinate personnel for rehearsal of infantry embarking aboard AAVs while on ship. |
| EVALUATOR INST | <u>CRUCTIONS</u> : None. |
| KEY INDICATORS | <u>5</u> : |
| | MISSION ANALYSIS |
| Ensure that th | ne AAV company commander's analysis of the mission includes: |
| - The effe | ect of hydrography/terrain on the employment of AAV support. |
| - AAV comp | pany ability to facilitate accomplishment of assigned mission. |
| - The need | d for any special support. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10B.02. | 02 PREPARES FOR EMBARKATION |
| | The AAV company is tasked to support an amphibious embarkation developed by the supported unit based on the scheme of maneuver an. |
| STANDARDS: EV | VAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 7 | AAV representatives attend planning conferences, as directed. |
| | Company commander advises supported commander on shipping requirements and recommends methods of embarkation. |
| | Company commander/staff completes required embarkation documentation and submits those tables in a timely manner. |
| | Preparations for the embarkation of AAVs is completed prior to the arrival of assault shipping. |

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: The evaluator must be familiar with the various documents required for the completion of the embarkation plan contained in FMFM 4-2, Amphibious Embarkation.

.5 $_$ The company commander ensures the proper loading of AAVs in the

correct sequence aboard assault shipping.

KEY INDICATORS:

PLANNING CONFERENCE

Ensures that planning conferences include:

- Embarkation of vehicles and crews.
- Embarkation of command, maintenance, and communication personnel requested to support vehicle commitments.
- Loading of supplies and equipment such as fuel, ammunition (both smoke and antipersonnel), and repair parts to support embarked vehicles.

TASK: 10B.02.03 EMBARK AAVS

<u>CONDITION(S)</u>: Planning conferences have been completed, and the AAV embarking ATF shipping with infantry personnel on board the AAVs.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| 71110 | |
|-------|--|
| .1 | The AAV company commander ensures surf report has been submitted per AAV unit SOP. |
| .2 | Company commander ensures all safety procedures are briefed |
| .3 | Company commander ensures that positive communication with the Privacy Control Ship (PCS) is established. |
| .4 | Company staff ensures that prewater operation checklists are submitted prior to splashing. |
| .5 | Company commander ensures rescue vehicles are designated. |
| .6 | Positive control and communication is maintained by the AAV commander or designated personnel. |
| .7 | Company staff ensures loading is completed as coordinated with the ATF representatives at the planning conference. |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

board ship.

KEY INDICATORS:

RESCUER VEHICLES

__ Crew chiefs ensure AAVs are tied down with appropriate devices on

Ensure that while all vehicles are potential rescue vehicles and that there is an AAV designated as the primary recycle vehicle.

TASK: 10B.02.04 PREPARE FOR DEBARKATION

CONDITION(S): Embarked aboard ATF shipping, AAV company has completed rehearsals, and the landing plan has been adjusted and promulgated in its final form. The Command Amphibious Task Force (CATF) has imposed Emission Control (EMCON).

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: | v: | N; | NF. |
|------------|-----------|----|------|------|
| DIVIDUIDO. | ± ∨ ₽ □ • | / | T/ / | TATE |

| .1 | AAV company commander conducts surf analysis based on latest |
|----|---|
| .2 | Company conducts final preparation under EMCON. |
| .3 | AAV company commander coordinates with ATF representatives on conduct of AAV launch. (KI) |
| .4 | AAV company personnel are briefed and prepared to conduct AAV |

.5 ____ AAV company commander ensures embarkation rehearsals and safety briefs with embarked infantry are conducted per the AAV

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

COORDINATION PREPARATIONS

Ensure that AAV company commander discusses the following with the naval representatives and the AAV crews:

- Type of launch

- Weather, sea and tidal conditions

- Prelaunch warm up time and sequence - Ballast conditions

- Time for undogging AAVs

- Assignment of boat teams to AAVs

- Time to load man AAVs

- Staging AAVs

- Time to launch - Launch signals

- Barriers

- Radio checks per EMCON conditions

- Beach characteristics

- Boat lane location

- Multiple vehicle launches from a single ship

- Simulates launches from multiple

- Vent fans on prior to AAV starts

- Launch internal

- Launch sequence

- Hand and arm signals - Flag and flashing

light signals

- Frequencies and call

signs

- Designation of wave guides and commanders

- Naval Control Group command and control

- Recovery of disabled

vehicles

- Transfer of personnel

- Signals for emergency

lifting of NGF

- Stalled vehicle procedures in well deck

- Magnetic compass

TASK: 10B.02.05 CONDUCT DEBARKATION AND SHIP-TO-SHORE MOVEMENT

CONDITION(S): AAV company has completed debarkation from naval ships and proceeding toward the assigned beaches.

ENCLOSURE (1)

10-B-11

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
|------------|---|
| .1 | AAVs complete debarkation in sequence per published time |
| .2 | AAV company forms into waves per the landing plan. (KI) |
| .3 | AAV company maintains internal communications with the Primary Control Ship (PCS). (KI) $$ |
| .4 | AAV company maintains internal communications per unit SOP. |
| .5 | Proper interval between AAVs is maintained per AAV unit SOP. |
| .6 | Line Of Departure is crossed per the landing plan. |
| .7 | Emergency operations/vehicle recoveries are conducted per AAV |
| .8 | AAV wave commanders control maneuver and maintain the formation within the wave utilizing the grid reference system |
| .9 | Smoke is utilized for screening, if required. |
| .10 | If attached to the AAV company, the AAV company commander Controls the sequence and employment of mine clearance |
| .11 | Company commander controls movement of AAVs through cleared |

LANDING PLAN

The landing plan is the plan of the supported unit commander for landing his troops, equipment, and supplies in the proper formations, on the assigned beaches and landing zones, and at the times dictated by the scheme of maneuver. It provides for the control afloat of landing craft, AAVs, helicopters, and floating dumps. Normally, the landing force landing plan is prepared as Appendix 3 (Landing Plan) to Annex B (Amphibious Operations) of the operations order. The documents/tables which deal with the troops and their equipment are included as tabs to the landing plan. The plan for landing supplies is contained in the appendix to the CSS plan. The AAV element commander prepares or helps to prepare the amphibious vehicle assignment table, the serial assignment table, the amphibious vehicle availability table, the amphibious vehicle employment plan, assault schedule, and the landing diagram.

ASSAULT SCHEDULE

The assault schedule prescribes the formation, composition, and timing of waves to be landed over the beaches. Both scheduled and nonscheduled waves are covered. Planning starts at the BLT level. BLT commanders determine the formation and composition of their respective waves; scheduled and on call. The AAV commander provides input to the Battalion Landing Team commander and naval operations personnel on the PCS ship during the preparation of the assault schedule.

ENCLOSURE (1)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

LANDING CRAFT AND AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE ASSIGNMENT TABLE

The landing craft and amphibious vehicle assignment table depicts the organization of troop units into boat teams and the assignment of boat teams to waves or to a serialized element of a nonscheduled wave. It is prepared by the commanding officer of troops of each ship. The AAV commander advises supported commanders and staffs with respect to vehicle capacity and methods of employment. AAV platoon commanders on each ship assist in the preparation of this document.

SERIAL ASSIGNMENT TABLE

A serial is a group of troop units, supporting units, and equipment embarked on the same ship and which, for tactical or logistical reasons, are to be loaded on a specified beach at approximately the same time. The serial assignment table shows the following in tabulated form:

- Serial number.
- Title of unit.
- Approximate number of personnel in the serial.
- Material, vehicles, and equipment in the serial.
- Number and type of AAVs or landing craft required to transport.
- Ship on which the serial is embarked.
- Remarks to include the landing category, designated wave, on call wave, or nonscheduled unit. Such remarks aid in rapid identification and location of the serial by control agencies.

LANDING SEQUENCE TABLE

Detailed plans for the ship-to-shore movement of nonscheduled units are set forth in the landing sequence table. It is used by troop and naval agencies as the principal document in executing and controlling the movement of nonscheduled units. The completed table forms the basis for embarkation and loading plans of the units concerned. The AAV unit commander advises as to which vehicle best meets the landing force requirement, where it would be best embarked, and other considerations pertaining to AAV employment.

LANDING DIAGRAM

The landing diagram is the graphic means to illustrate the plan for ship-to-shore movement of the scheduled waves of an assault unit. Each AAV is identified by two numbers: the first indicating the wave; the second, the position of the vehicle in the wave. The unit commander prepares or assists in the preparation of this document.

WAVE CONTROL

The AAV company commander/wave commander maintains communications with the Primary Control Ship (PCS) and with the AAVs in the wave. The AAV commander controls the wave to ensure it crosses the LOD on time, proceeds down the boat lane and touches down on time.

MPS 10B.03 - SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE

TASK: 10B.03.01 PREPARE TO OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AAV company is ordered to report to the supported unit assembly area. The movement can be conducted under any light conditions. The company is required to be task organized upon arrival in the assembly area and to be ready to embark Marines, their weapons, ammunition, and equipment.

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
|--------------|---|
| .1 | AAV Company Commander task organizes and assigns AAVs to units to be supported; provides their tentative locations and numbers or troops, weapons, ammunition, and supplies to be |
| .2 | AAV Company Commander task organizes logistics element and coordinates resupply means. |
| .3 | Company staff considers OPSEC measures during the planning of |
| . 4 | Company commander coordinates designated routes with the supported unit to resolve movement schedules, and identify known obstacles, location of friendly rear units, the location of any passed enemy units or obstacles, etc. |
| .5 | Company commander plans route(s) of march that offers the most cover and concealment. |
| .6 | Company staff develops, in coordination with the supported units Fire Support Center (FSC), a fire support plan, and receives frequencies and call signs of fire control nets. |
| .7 | The company dispatches a quartering party to the supported unit to coordinate the arrival at, and defense of, the |
| .8 | Control measures (check points, release points, etc.), to ensure an orderly move to the assembly area are designated. |
| .9 | Company commander provides details of vehicle markings to the supported unit in order for them to identify assigned |
| EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATO | RS: None. |

TASK: 10B.03.02 PREPARE FOR TACTICAL MOVEMENT FROM ASSEMBLY AREA

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AAV company is attached in direct support of an making final preparations for offensive operations.

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
|------------|--|
| .1 | Company commander acknowledges receipt of order. |
| .2 | Company commander issues warning order to all subordinate |
| .3 | Company commander establishes liaison with the supported unit and receives further guidance from the commander. |
| .4 | Ensures movement order is received and understood by all subordinate units. (KI) |
| .5 | AAV company commander advises supported unit on the route/axis of advance to include selection of control measures. |
| .6 | Ensures subordinate unit leaders are prepared for the operation, ammunition is replenished, and other special preparation requirements are completed prior to the |
| .7 | Company staff utilizes a terrain model, sketch, or other training aids when briefing the plan and/or conducting |
| .8 | AAV commander conducts a detailed brief of AAV support during the combined infantry/AAV briefing, and coordinates immediate actions, i.e., ambushes, air strikes, artillery attacks, vehicle breakdown, etc., and in accordance with AAV and |
| .9 | AAV staff ensures all company personnel understand the plan and are cognizant of their duties and responsibilities. |
| .10 | Route from present location to Start Point/Line of Departure (SP/LOD) is reconnoitered to determine the time the movement must be initiated in order to comply with start time. |
| .11 | Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits. |
| .12 | Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen OPSEC vulnerability. |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

Ensure the warning order includes:

- General information on the situation.
- Units to make the move and the anticipated sequence.

.13 ____ COMSEC material is issued as appropriate.

- Special logistic support and delivery times required for the operations.
- Anticipated time of movement.

- Time and place the formal order is to be issued and who is to attend.

MOVEMENT ORDER

Ensure the movement order includes:

- Control measures.
- Time for radio check.
- Time SP/LOD is to be crossed.
- Order of march.
- Rate of march reference time and distance, if applicable.
- Rate of march reference catch-up speed and interval.
- Actions at halts and upon contact.
- Route clearance time, if applicable.
- Initial techniques of movement/formations.
- Recovery procedures for disabled vehicle.

COORDINATION WITH SUPPORTED UNIT

Ensure prior coordination between supported and supporting organizations include at least:

- Route of advance.
- Signals and communications.
- Actions upon contact.
- Limitations of the supported unit.
- Supportability of the mission.

OPERATION ORDER

Ensure the operation order, either verbal or written when time permits, contains at least the following:

- Clearly stated mission.
- Commander's intent.
- Maneuvered and available fire support.
- Force of main effort.
- Definition of all control measures to be used: checkpoints, phase lines, etc

- Identification of each specific objective to be seized.
- Any limiting instructions to temper engagements with enemy forces.
- Technique of movement to be used to include designation of loading, trailing, and overwatch elements.
- All available information on the enemy threat with emphasis on ATGMs, mines, obstacles, and other weapons which could affect the accomplishment of the mission.
 - Identification of overwatch positions to be occupied.
 - Communication/Signals to be used.
 - Actions at the objective.
 - Be prepared on order mission.
 - Disabled vehicle disposition.
- Critical logistics functions, i.e., rearming, refueling, emergency repairs.

TASK: 10B.03.03 EMPLOY MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES

CONDITION(S): The infantry is task organized with an AAV company to operations. The enemy situation and operating area requires the employment of varying movement techniques. The enemy, in addition to direct and indirect fire and air capabilities, has EW capability as well. The supported unit's OpOrd, based on input from the AAV company commander, specifies movement techniques and signals to alter the movement techniques and formations, as well as procedures to be used upon contact with the enemy.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The company maintains air/ground security at all times. |
|-----|---|
| .2 | The company commander maintains positive communication with lead, flank, and rear security elements. |
| .3 | AAV commander recommends changes to the formation as the enemy situation changes. |
| . 4 | AAV commander recommends movement techniques that make the best use of the terrain. (KI) |
| .5 | Moving unit communicates internally using visual signals, if |
| .6 | When moving, the company arrives and departs checkpoints within the time frames specified in the order. |
| .7 | Arrival at established control measures is reported to parent headquarters, if not attached. |

| .8 | AAV crew members demonstrate knowledge of procedures to be used upon contact with enemy forces. | | | | | | | |
|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| .9 | AAVs employ smoke and suppressive fires for self-protection upon initial contact or as directed by the supported unit. | | | | | | | |
| .10 | Appropriate techniques of movement are used when crossing danger areas. (KI) | | | | | | | |
| EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. | | | | | | | |
| KEY INDICATO | RS: A movement technique is recommended based on METT-TSL. | | | | | | | |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10B.0 | 3.04 CONDUCT TACTICAL HALT | | | | | | | |
| CONDITION(S) | : The AAV Company is required to hold while conducting a | | | | | | | |
| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE | | | | | | | |
| .1 | The company halts in a formation appropriate to the terrain, time available, and enemy situation, with infantry dismounted to secure the area. | | | | | | | |
| .2 | The company commander ensures unit security immediately to include air watches. | | | | | | | |
| .3 | At halt, vehicle halt checks are conducted per the unit SOP based on time available. | | | | | | | |
| .4 | Vehicles are prepared to move out on order and in the prescribed order of march. | | | | | | | |
| EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. | | | | | | | |
| KEY INDICATO | RS: None. | | | | | | | |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10B.0 | 3.06 PLAN AN IN-STRIDE BREACH | | | | | | | |
| The GCE encor in width and reports veri vehicles are tactical site | The AAV company with platoon is in support of a GCE unit size. Unters a minefield which extends 200 meters in length and 50 meters is in the axis of advance and cannot be bypassed. Intelligence fy the presence of antipersonnel and antitank mines. MCM MK154 loaded with MK22 Mod 3/4 rocket motors and M59 line charges. The uation requires that the minefield be breached immediately. emy defenses of the minefield are limited to a platoon size unit. | | | | | | | |
| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE | | | | | | | |
| .1 | AAV commander issues a FRAG on how the breach will be | | | | | | | |
| .2 | Coordinates obscuring and screening smoke with GCE commander | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |

| .3 | Coordinates with combat engineers a method of marking cleared lane(s), and the GCE sequence of movement through the |
|---|--|
| .4 | Coordinates MCM actions after the breach is accomplished. |
| .5 | The order is issued to all MK154 team leaders and other key |
| .6 | The AAV company commander ensures all personnel understand the plan and are cognizant of their responsibilities. |
| EVALUATOR INS | STRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATOR | RS: None. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10B.03 | 3.07 CONDUCT BREACHING OF A MINEFIELD |
| through an er Breach Force vehicle(s) an forward in su | The AAV company with MCM platoon attached is tasked with breach nemy minefield and the AAV company commander is designated as a Commander. Planning for the breach has been accomplished. The MCM re in hasty positions. The support force has security elements apport by fire positions. Fire superiority has been achieved and reening smoke has commenced. |
| STANDARDS: F | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | Engineer reconnaissance team has called in a minefield report and the breach force commander has passed it to the GCE |
| .2 | Breach force commander sets up breaching equipment per |
| .3 | The tank plow and MK151 are moved into position at breach site as marked by combat engineers. |
| . 4 | Support force effectively uses organic weapons to suppress the far side of the obstacle. |
| .5 | Breach force demonstrates a well integrated and successful breach of the minefield that effectively suppresses the enemy, screens the breach site, and allows for a well aimed rocket launch and line charge detonation that provides the desired |
| .6 | The cleared lanes are marked so the assault force can find and move through the breach. |
| .7 | The breach force commander has redundant capabilities if the first breach element is destroyed or the lane(s) become |
| .8 | The breach force commander notifies the assault force commander when the lane(s), are cleared and marked and that the assault force can move through the breach. |
| .9 | Once the assault force and the support force have moved through the breach site, the breach force consolidates on the |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 10B.03.08 CONDUCT NIGHT OPERATIONS

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV company has been ordered to provide support to an Across country movement at night is required to link up with the adjacent unit. The adjacent unit is located at a minimum distance of 5 miles. The enemy has direct and indirect fire, air and Electronic Warfare (EW) capabilities. The AAV company commander has been ordered to limit radio traffic to the absolute minimum, and use covered communications. Night vision devices are available to the company.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Company commander plans for the effective allocation and employment of night vision devices in order to minimize the number of restrictive control measures. |
|--------------|--|
| .2 | The company coordinates with the adjacent unit to specify link up point, route, fire support plan, call signs and frequencies, and recognition signals. |
| .3 | Route selection minimize AAV exposure to the enemy versus the selection of a route following prominent terrain features. |
| .4 | Company staff determines the ambient light level. |
| .5 | Company staff considers the effect of ambient light level on Night Vision Goggles (NVGs). |
| .6 | AAV commander demonstrates the ability to maintain effective command and control over the formation during night |
| .7 | The AAV commander displays the ability to navigate. |
| .8 | Company staff has a developed plan for primary and alternate means of communications to ensure effective command and |
| .9 | Company has plans for immediate actions that are easily coordinated and controlled. |
| .10 | The company employs navigation aids, such as the GPS, chemical lights, etc., to aid in movement. |
| .11 | The commander plans for an employs a quartering party. |
| EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATO | RS: None. |

TASK: 10B.03.09 ESTABLISH DEFENSIVE POSITIONS

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AAV company is in direct support of an infantry unit.

| STANDARDS: I | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
|--------------|---|
| .1 | AAV company commander acknowledges receipt of the supported unit's OpOrd/FRAGO and ensures subordinate leaders understand |
| .2 | AAV unit commander recommends what type of defense will be used, mobile or position, to the supported commander. |
| .3 | AAV company commander and key personnel conduct a reconnaissance of the assigned defensive positions. |
| .4 | The AAV company moves to the initial defensive positions utilizing movement techniques appropriate to the threat, |
| .5 | AAV company commander ensures subordinate leaders are preparing positions in support of their supported infantry |
| .6 | AAV commander coordinates with the supported unit and ensures vehicle security is provided. |
| .7 | AAV commander coordinates sectors of fire and the general location of vehicle fighting positions with the supported |
| .8 | AAV crews prepare and occupy fighting positions. |
| .9 | AAV crews prepare range cards. |
| .10 | AAV crews make efforts to cover "track prints" around |
| .11 | AAV company lays communications wire, if time permits. |
| .12 | AAV company coordinates with the supported unit, selects alternate and supplementary positions, covered and concealed routes between fighting positions, and rehearses movement |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

AAV COMPANY COMMANDER RESPONSIBILITIES

The AAV company commander designates sectors of fires to maximize the effectiveness of the unit's weapons. These sectors are submitted to the supported unit's headquarters for inclusion in the overall defensive overlay. He places special emphasis on the following:

- Proper utilization of terrain.
- Covered and concealed positions.

.13 ____ AAV crewmen utilize night vision devices.

- Camouflage techniques.
- Control of key terrain.

- Defense in depth with mutually supporting fires.
- Good observation and fields of fire.
- Designated Target Reference Points (TRPs), engagement areas, boundaries, and Armor Kill Zone (AKZs).
 - Cover for likely fields of approach.
 - Long range and flanking fires.
 - Supplemental positions.
 - Coordination with adjacent units.
 - Plans for close and midrange fires.
 - Plan for withdrawal.
 - Designated priority of work.
 - Assignment of target priorities.
 - Construct/Coordinate emplacement of obstacle.

TASK: 10B.03.10 EMPLOYMENT OF AAV WEAPONS IN THE DEFENSE

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AAV company is providing .50 cal, 40mm, and small arms from defensive positions at night. Enemy forces are located from ranges of 200 meters to 1500 meters. The targets vary from troops in trench lines and bunkers to armored vehicles.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Company commander advises supported unit commander on employment of |
|-----|---|
| | the AAVs organic firepower assets as per control |
| . 2 | AAV crewman demonstrate the proper use of a range card. (KI) |

.3 ____ Company Commander advises supported unit commander on a Final Protective Fire (FPF), if required.

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: Pyrotechnics are fired to provide ambient light to ensure the target is being hit if NVGs are not available or utilized. All AAV crews should be evaluated.

KEY INDICATORS:

Published by the senior headquarters or supported unit and should include:

- Target Reference Points (TRPs).
- Engagement areas/armor kill zones.

- Sectors and limits of fire.
- Unit boundaries.
- Target priorities for each weapon system.

RANGE CARDS

The four essential parts of a range card are:

- Target identification.
- Deflection.
- Range.
- Elevation.

EFFECTS

Rounds have effect on target.

TASK: 10B.03.11 EMPLOYMENT OF SMOKE SCREEN

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV company is supporting embarked infantry personnel. Enemy forces have engaged the element. The employment of smoke has been briefed prior to the commencement of operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The AAV company executes smoke screen utilizing the smoke generating system and/or smoke grenade launcher.
- .2 ____ AAV crews execute the correct loading and firing of the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher.
- .3 ____ AAV crews execute immediate action on the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher, if required. (KI)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

IMMEDIATE ACTION

If the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher does not fire on the first attempt, immediate action procedures are as follows:

- Shut down electrical power in the turret.
- Ensure grenade is properly seated.
- - If properly seated, remove the grenade, place it in another tube and attempt to fire. If it still does not fire, then stow the round to turn in

later to EOD personnel for disposal.

 $\,$ - - If the grenade is not properly seated, then reset and attempt to fire. If grenade still does not fire, change tubes and follow procedures as described above.

 ${\hbox{\tt TASK}}\colon$ 10B.03.12 SUPPORTS COMMAND AND CONTROL FROM ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN COMMAND VEHICLE, AAVC7A1

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: During the movement to contact and consolidation phase of the supported infantry unit is entirely embarked in AAVs. A command section is being utilized to control maneuver and maintain required communications for supported infantry.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Assigned C-7 | sections | know | and | utilize | the | AAVs | capabilities | and |
|----|---------------|------------|-------|-----|---------|-----|------|--------------|-----|
| | avoid vehicle | e limitat: | ions. | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |

2 ____ C-7 sections conduct orientation training for supported unit

.3 ____ Crews perform required checks on all internal radio equipment.

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: Evaluator should understand that the supported unit is responsible for operator actions within the communications compartment of AAVC.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

MPS 10B.04 - SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

TASK: 10B.04.01 CONDUCT RECOVERY OPERATIONS

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV company is in direct support. An AAV has become a casualty and must be recovered.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Immediate actions are taken to extract personnel and/or extinguish fires, consistent with the tactical situation. |
|----|---|
| .2 | AAV crew and company maintenance personnel conduct battle damage assessment and perform repairs, if possible. |
| .3 | Company staff coordinates recovery effort with the supported unit, to include the location of, and movement to, the |
| .4 | Disabled vehicle and/or equipment is successfully recovered/evacuated, or the parent/CSS is notified. |
| .5 | If applicable, NBC contaminated equipment is |
| .6 | Company commander requests replacement vehicle, if tactically |
| .7 | AAV crew men or maintenance personnel use approved methods of destruction to prevent enemy use of the vehicle if the vehicle is beyond salvage or recovery. |

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with the Tactical Exercise Commander (TEC), inserts sufficient vehicle casualty play into the tactical scenario to evaluate this task.

KEY INDICATORS:

RECOVERY COORDINATION

The recovery crew must:

- Coordinate with the supported unit to ensure familiarization with the situation and tactical control measures in effect.
 - Identify location and plan a route to vehicle/equipment.
 - Locate vehicle/equipment without excessive searching.
 - Ensure security augmentation, if tactically required.

RECOVERY, EVACUATION OF CONTAMINATED EQUIPMENT

NBC contaminated recovery operations have the following additional requirements:

- Crews adopt MOPP4 and button up recovery vehicle before entering contaminated area.
 - Select route that minimizes exposure.

- Enforce all safety regulations.
- Rig for evacuation.
- Recover vehicle/equipment and evacuate it to the EDS.
- Assist EDS personnel in decontaminating the recovery vehicle.
- Evacuate to the appropriate maintenance/support activity.

TASK: 10B.04.02 CONDUCT SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV company is tasked to support tactical operations and/or on land. Initial planning and logistical planning has been completed, as well as liaison with the supported unit, parent command, and CSS. Final preparations for supportability have been complied.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Company completes all 1st through 3rd echelon maintenance prior to deployment. |
|----|---|
| .2 | Supply and maintenance responsibilities are clearly understood by the AAV company commander and staff, and the supported unit, parent unit, and CSS. (KI) |
| .3 | AAV vehicle crews are trained and knowledgeable in the proper care, use, operation, cleaning, preservation, and lubrication |
| .4 | Trained unit maintenance personnel and/or maintenance contact teams are located will forward and readily available to the |
| .5 | The AAV company carries an operational block of repair parts to include PEB, preventative maintenance, expendable materials, and secondary repairable for all equipment organic |
| .6 | Preventative maintenance "spot check" inspections are conducted on a routine basis and a continuing service program |
| .7 | Recover, refueling, and resupply are conducted per SOPs and preoperation coordination. |

.8 ____ Company maintenance personnel are capable of conducting 1st through

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with the TEC, inserts sufficient logistic and maintenance requirements into the tactical scenario to provide for evaluation of this task.

3rd echelon maintenance/repairs in a forward area.

KEY INDICATORS:

ORGANIZATIONAL MAINTENANCE

Ensure operational maintenance is organized to accomplish the following:

- Make repairs as far forward as possible.
- Identify and record precise discrepancies of the vehicles and equipment to include specific parts and actions required.
- Provide necessary personnel, parts, tools, and equipment to affect repairs.
- Repair and return vehicles and equipment to the unit in a timely manner.

Supply and maintenance responsibilities encompass Battle Damage Assessment (BDA) and repair, recovery, PEB, parts block expendable materials, maintenance administration, calibration, technical publications weapons, optics, etc.

MPS 10B.05 - CONTINUING ACTIONS BY MARINES

TASK: 10B.05.01 IMPLEMENTING DISCIPLINE

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: An AAV company is tasked to support tactical operations of combat element. Operations can be waterborne, ashore, or both.

.1 ____ Company discipline is demonstrated by individual members being in control of themselves and successfully completing their individual tasks that contribute to mission accomplishment. _ Company personnel safeguard and clean their weapons, both individual and crew served, daily. .3 ____ Vehicles, generators, etc., are given regular preventative maintenance by the Marine(s) assigned to operate them. _ Marines employ their firepower using proper fire discipline. Marines do not waste or abuse unit supplies or material. __ Supplies are safeguarded from the enemy and from the weather and are not scattered about. .7 ____ Marines operating radios do not expose themselves to Radio Detection Finding (RDF) by unnecessary, wordy, or repetitious message traffic. Standard passwords are used and communication checks are limited. All personnel using radios adhere to required standards of performance regardless of grade. .8 ____ The company cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor noise discipline. .9 ____ The company cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor light discipline.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: If the company is located by RDF or observation as a result of noise, light, and/or communication procedures, the standard cannot be considered as having been met. Evaluators must determine if the company is violating light, noise, and communication procedures discipline when no aggressors or EW support is available from the TEC exercise and evaluators will note efforts of unit leaders to maintain and correct discipline. Improvement by the company throughout the exercise, such as standards become consistently met, may result in a "yes" marking.

Leaders actively promote field sanitation and personal hygiene by enforcing use of designated heads, good personal health habits,

_ Marines wear the prescribed uniform at all times.

police of area, and inspection of the

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 10B.05.02 CONDUCT PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV company is supporting tactical operations. The limited duration; however, the AAV company is supporting the ship-to-shore movement and land operations.

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: | Υ; | N; | NE |
|------------|-------|----|----|----|
|------------|-------|----|----|----|

| .1 | The company staff includes preventative maintenance considerations during planning. |
|-----|---|
| .2 | Company personnel display a sense of urgency when conducting |
| .3 | Preoperation, during operation and postoperation checks are conducted as per unit SOP and current first echelon Technical |
| .4 | Proper startup procedures are followed. |
| .5 | During halts, scheduled and unscheduled, checks are performed, per the ${\tt TMs.}({\tt KI})$ |
| .6 | Proper cool down procedures are followed before shutting down. |
| .7 | Additional equipment, including weapons and communication gear, receives continuous maintenance by crewmen. |
| .8 | Safety precautions, as contained in the TMs and SOPs, are |
| .9 | AAVs do not become maintenance casualties due to a lack of preventative maintenance. |
| .10 | Company maintenance personnel aggressively coordinate with AAV subordinate units to identify corrective maintenance |

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: This task is applicable at all times. Evaluators must be familiar with proper first echelon maintenance and lubrication procedures.

KEY INDICATORS:

HALT CHECKS

Halt checks are scheduled to occur during all long movements. Anytime the unit makes unscheduled halts, PM checks are made. During short halts, a walk around inspection is made to check hull and suspension components. Longer halts include engine compartment/fluid level checks.

TASK: 10B.05.03 DEMONSTRATE DISPERSION

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AAV company is tasked to provide direct support for operations to a ground element. The tactical situation requires both offensive and defensive actions to occur.

| STANDARDS: EVAL | : Y; N; NE |
|------------------|---|
| mov | company vehicles and personnel maintain dispersion during ement, and in particular, do not bunch together at the clusion of an attack or defensive action. |
| .2 Veh | icles maintain assigned positions and intervals during |
| | icle dispersion is maintained during halts, in assembly areas, when deployed in the defense. |
| | ividual dispersion is maintained in assembly areas or when loyed in the defense. |
| | erial dispersion is maintained to reduce its' vulnerability incoming munitions. |
| EVALUATOR INSTRU | CTIONS: Utilize METT-TSL when evaluating these standards. |
| KEY INDICATORS: | None. |
| CONDITION(S): T | EMPLOY COVER AND CONCEALMENT he AAV company is tasked to provide direct support of a offensive and defensive operations. |
| STANDARDS: EVAL | |
| | ividual Marines demonstrate attention to detail when |
| | ouflaging company vehicles and equipment to include protection inst overhead observation. |
| .2 Dur | ing short halts, crews take advantage of natural cover and |
| | n halted for extended periods, vehicles are camouflaged and lective surfaces are dulled. |
| | ipment and tentage are provided with appropriate netting or concealed with natural material. |
| tha | company staff stresses placement of men and material in areas t provide cover and concealment from casual detection by the my. Use of shadow areas for hasty concealment is |
| .6 Cov | ered positions allow for adequate observation and fields of |
| | wmembers are able to generate vehicle smoke for screening if uired by the supporting unit commander. |
| | ing refueling operations, sites are selected and prepared, if uired, with camouflage and cover. |
| | CTIONS: Evaluator observes individual Marines and the his task is applicable throughout the operation. |

KEY INDICATORS:

COVERED POSITION

Ensure that covered firing positions satisfy the following requirements:

- Position allows on the vehicle can cover the assigned targets/engagement areas.
- Vehicle's hull is protected from direct from the front and protected from indirect fire by preparing positions when possible. Company will utilize engineer assets to prepare positions when possible.

TASK: 10B.05.05 REACT TO DIRECT FIRES

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}\colon \ \text{The AAV company is moving and is engaged by enemy vehicles/armored personnel carriers, antitank gun, ATGM, or small arms.}$

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: | Υ; | N; | NE |
|------------|-------|----|----|----|
| | | | | |

| .1 | AAV company returns suppressive fire immediately, if in range. |
|----------------------|--|
| .2 | Smoke is employed to obscure the enemy's observation and to screen the movement of AAVs, if tactically appropriated. |
| .3 | Company AAVs take appropriate evasive action to utilize available terrain features/dispersion. |
| . 4 | The company employs all available direct fire weapons to suppress the enemy. |
| .5 | AAV unit leader immediately requests fire support from mortars, artillery, NSFS, and/or aircraft, if available. |
| .6 | SPOT reports are promptly submitted to the supported unit |
| EVALUATOR INS | STRUCTIONS: A simulated or actual request for fire, artillery or equired. |
| KEY INDICATOR | RS: None. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10B.0! | 5.06 REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE |
| CONDITION(S) | : The AAV Company is moving and comes under indirect fire source. |
| STANDARDS: 1 | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | Vehicle button up. |
| .2 | Smoke is employed to obscure enemy's observation and to screen the movement of AAVs, if tactically appropriate. |

| .3 | AAV commander ensures dispersion and uses immediate action to maximize use of available covering terrain. |
|----------------------|---|
| .4 | When under "automatic masking" directives, crews don protective mask, initiate NBC monitor/survey, and submit NBC-1 |
| .5 | The company moves through, or bypasses, the impact area and continues the mission. |
| .6 | The company submits spot report and SHELLREP to the supported unit as appropriate. |
| rounds, and t | STRUCTIONS: Evaluator specifies type of weapon simulated, number of type of ammunition used by simulated enemy firing unit. The ll provide direction of fire if crater analysis is performed. |
| KEY INDICATOR | RS: None. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10B.05 | 5.07 ESTABLISHES TACTICAL RADIO COMMUNICATION |
| | The AAV company is in direct support of tactical operations order company to operate covered circuits. |
| STANDARDS: H | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | Crews correctly operate crypto equipment, if required. |
| .2 | Operators correctly use data transfer device for Frequency Hopping (FH) data/crypto fill. |
| .3 | Radio operators correctly use authentication tables, if |
| .4 | Company personnel correctly use the "gingerbread" procedures. |
| .5 | Unit leaders are able to explain the capabilities and limitations of the communications system in both the AAVP and |
| .6 | Operators implement radio discipline by keeping conversations short and radio checks to a minimum. |
| .7 | Crewmen utilize low power radio settings for short distance |
| .8 | Inoperable communications equipment is reported in a timely |
| .9 | Company staff and crew chiefs demonstrate the ability to pass information by alternate means. |
| .10 | Personnel demonstrate the ability to employ all types of organic antennas and field expedient antennas. |
| .11 | Company personnel demonstrate the ability to load Comsec/FH data and single channel frequency. |
| .12 | Company personnel demonstrate the ability to perform a late |

| .13 | Communication personnel demonstrate the ability to transfer Communication-Electronics Operating Instruction (CEOI) information from Automated Net Control Device (ANCD) to ANCD (from supported unit to company's ANCDs). |
|---------------------------|---|
| .14 | Communication personnel demonstrate the ability to transfer Comsec/FH data/sync time from ANCD to ANCD. |
| .15 | Communication personnel demonstrate the ability to perform a Hot Start Net opening. |
| .16 | Communication personnel demonstrate the ability to load time and date from Precise Location Global positioning Receiving |
| .17 | Company personnel demonstrate the ability to load time and date from PLGR to Radio Transmitters (RTs). |
| | ISTRUCTIONS: It must be ascertained if interoperability is available and adjacent units. |
| KEY INDICATO | DRS: None. |
| CONDITION(S) Warfare cour | 25.08 RESPOND TO ENEMY ELECTRONIC WARFARE (EW) _: Enemy forces have Electronic Warfare Support Measures Electronic intermeasures (ECM) capability throughout the radio spectrum. Reception and frequency jamming are being used. |
| hands, and t | ems of friendly communications equipment are known to be in enemy they are familiar with our communication techniques and procedures. |
| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | All radio nets specified as covered circuits in the CEOI plan are operated in the covered mode. |
| .2 | CEO is followed; daily frequency changes and call sign changes |
| .3 | Operators adhere to Emission Control (EMCON) procedures. |
| .4 | Unit commanders choose sites that provide for terrain masking to minimize enemy probability of communication intercept, if |
| .5 | Authentication is required by Marine guarding uncovered radio |
| .6 | Radio operators do not reveal effectiveness of enemy jamming efforts, and continue to attempt to communicate. |
| .7 | Proven or suspected enemy electronic activity is promptly reported to the supported unit by a "MIJI" report via wire, messenger, or other secure means. |
| .8 | Personnel communicate by alternate means when radio nets are effectively jammed. |

| .9 | Radio operators do not compromise unit locations, strength, or commit other "BREADWINDOW" security violations. |
|---------------------|---|
| .10 | _ Expedient radio antennas are employed when feasible. |
| .11 | Low priority/routine messages are sent by means other than |
| .12 | _ Transmitting power is set at the minimum required to |
| .13 | _ Brevity codes promulgated by the OpOrd or SOP are employed. |
| EVALUATOR IN | NSTRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATO | DRS: None. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10B.0 | 05.09 RESPOND TO ENEMY AIR THREAT |
| | : The enemy has fixed wing and attack helicopter capability. ability is limited. Laser guided munitions are available to the |
| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | The AAV company has established procedures for both active and passive air defense. |
| .2 | Air guards are designated. (KI) |
| .3 | The company has an alarm system to warn of air attack. |
| . 4 | Crewman within the company recognize the air attack alarm and immediately react to it. |
| .5 | Embarked infantry are sector air watches, and use established procedures to alert personnel on board the AAV to air attack. |
| .6 | Effective placement of LAAD assets within the formation, and procedures for the timely flow of early warning information to them are established in coordination with the supported unit. |
| .7 | Maneuver elements continue to maneuver, relying on overwatch elements and air defense elements to engage attacking |
| .8 | If given advance warning of approaching hostile aircraft, the company takes appropriate passive measures. (KI) |
| .9 | If the company is taken by surprise by hostile aircraft the unit takes appropriate active defensive actions. (KI) |
| .10 | Company commander maintains fire control and causes the delivery of a heavy volume of fire at air targets. |
| | The company reports attack by enemy air to the supported unit by flash message. |

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with the Tactical Evaluation Controller, ensure that enemy air activity corresponds to contemporary threat air tactics, and that threat aircraft type is announced to the evaluated company.

KEY INDICATORS:

AIR GUARDS

Air guards are specifically assigned within each subordinate element designated to watch for the approach of hostile aircraft. Moving companies increase the number of air guards, and specify sectors to cover 360 degrees of observation. They are able to:

- State the nature of the threat; i.e., fixed-wing jet, fixed-wing prop, or rotary wing.
 - State the signal established as the alarm for attack.
 - Identify friendly aircraft that are in support of the unit.

PASSIVE DEFENSE AGAINST ENEMY AIRCRAFT

If adequate advance warning alerts the AAV unit to incoming enemy aircraft, whether it be fixed-wing or helicopter, the following passive measures should be taken:

- Slow movement down to reduce dust signature if on the move.
- Use covered and concealed firing positions; take up positions beside hill masses that will mask the vehicles and limit the approach angle of the aircraft.
 - Assign sectors of fire.

ACTIVE DEFENSE AGAINST ENEMY AIRCRAFT

Once the AAV unit has taken up a passive antiair posture, there is a possibility that enemy aircraft, especially fixed-wing, will not see the AAV unit and will bypass it. If so, the AAV unit should stay in place until the aircraft are safely out of range then continue on with the mission. If the enemy air detects the AAV unit, or the unit is ordered to engage the aircraft, the following steps are taken:

- AAV unit's air defense elements (AV (AD) and/or LAAD (if available) engage the aircraft.
- On order, AAVs and embarked Marines engage the aircraft with onboard weapons systems.
- Maneuver to provide the most difficult target to the aircraft, i.e., if in a column turn at a right angle to approaching aircraft.
- Employ smoke to screen the force and move to preplanned secondary positions.

TASK: 10B.05.10 PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV company is moving in a rear area without embarked and uncovers enemy soldiers attempting to emplace a mine. The soldiers are captured with both the explosive device and documents.

| STANDARDS: I | EVAL: | Υ; | N; | NE |
|--------------|-------|----|----|----|
|--------------|-------|----|----|----|

| .1 | The company has and uses SOP for processing EPWs. |
|-----|--|
| .2 | The Marines handling EPWs segregate them by type: officer, NCOs unranked, civilian combatants, sex, etc. |
| .3 | EPWs are searched immediately after capture; material found is tagged and kept with EPW. |
| .4 | EPWs are required to remain silent and are not permitted to converse among themselves. |
| .5 | EPWs are processed with speed to obtain maximum intelligence |
| .6 | Marines handling EPWs ensure that they are safeguarded from hazards of enemy fire. |
| .7 | Perishable information obtained from EPWs is reported to higher headquarters by most expeditious means. |
| .8 | When handling wounded or sick EPWs, the company ensures they receive proper medical care. |
| .9 | EPWs are allowed to retain personal protective equipment (e.g., helmet, gas mask, etc.). |
| .10 | EPWs and all recovered equipment/documents, are transferred to higher headquarters as soon as possible. |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

SEARCHING

EPWs should be disarmed and searched for concealed weapons, equipment, and documents of particular intelligence value immediately upon capture. The number of EPWs captured, enemy action, or other circumstances can make an immediate search impractical. Until each POW is searched, the responsible troops must be particularly alert to prevent the use of concealed weapons or destruction of documents or equipment.

EQUIPMENT

Items of personal or individual equipment which are new or appear to be of a type not previously seen may be of intelligence value and should be processed via intelligence channels. Types of equipment or supplies which may be individually carried or worn include, but are not limited to all types of weapons, ammunition, personal equipment (protective masks, first aid kits, etc.), clothing and rations.

DOCUMENTS

A captured document is any piece of recorded information which has been in the hands of the enemy. When such documents are taken from a EPW for safekeeping and delivery to intelligence personnel, care must be taken to assure that they can later be identified with the individual EPW from whom it was taken. Documents and records of a personal nature must be returned to the EPW from whom it was taken. In no instance should the personal identify card of a EPW be taken.

PERSONAL EFFECTS

EPWs should be permitted to retain protective equipment such as helmets, protective masks, and like items; effects and articles used for clothing or eating, except knives and forks; identification cards or tags; and badges of grade and nationality. When items of equipment issued for personal protection are taken, they must be replaced with equivalent items serving the same purpose. Although money and other valuables may be taken from EPWs as a security measure, they must be receipted for and a record maintained.

SEGREGATION

The segregation of EPWs requires that individual EPWs be identified as belonging to a particular category. While time and combat conditions may not permit the detailed interrogation of EPWs to make all such determinations, it should be possible to readily identify and separate EPWs according to status (officers/enlisted) and sex.

MEDICAL CARE

EPWs are entitled to the same medical care as friendly casualties, to include MEDEVAC priority. Any differences in treatment must be based solely on medical considerations.

TASK: 10B.05.11 PROCESS CASUALTY EVACUATIONS

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AAV company is in support and has been tasked with to provide for a waterborne means of evacuating casualties. Organic corpsmen are the unit.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The AAV company develops a plan for medical evacuation and has briefed the supported unit. |
|----|--|
| .2 | The AAV company understands the supported unit's MEDEVAC procedures, priorities, and required reports. |
| .3 | AAV litter kits are properly installed and serviceable. |
| .4 | Company Marines dealing with casualties prior to arrival of corpsmen use correct first aid skills in the treatment for shock, fractures, penetrating wounds, and sucking chest |
| .5 | Company Marines tagged as lightly wounded apply self aid. |

| .6 | Marines dealing with casualties are familiar with evacuation procedures, locations of medical facilities, and safe routes |
|---------------------|--|
| .7 | Marines who must be evacuated are transported to the treatment site in a tactically sound and expeditious manner with adequate on board medical assistance. |
| .8 | Casualty reporting begins immediately through the chain of |
| .9 | Wounded Marines' equipment is safeguarded. |
| | STRUCTIONS: This task is applicable in all evaluations, and should by evaluator or TECG input to ensure knowledge. |
| KEY INDICATO | <u>RS</u> : |
| | CHAIN OF EVACUATION |
| Location of | should be aware of all possible means to MEDEVAC personnel. aid stations should be noted in operations orders. Each AAV ld have a corpsman assigned to assist in medical treatment and |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10B.0 | 5.12 IMPLEMENTING AAV OPERATIONAL SAFETY PRECAUTIONS |
| | : The AAV company is in support of tactical operations both They have the ability to operate in limited light conditions. |
| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | The company conducts a safety brief for embarked personnel prior to water operations. |
| .2 | All embarked personnel wear helmets. (KI) |
| .3 | All personnel wear inflatable preservers during water |
| .4 | Safety belts are not worn while the vehicle is waterborne. |
| .5 | Embarked personnel wear normal combat equipment loose enough to jettison without delay. |
| .6 | All embarked personnel have an individual vision light attached to the life preserver during night operations. |
| .7 | Personnel are restricted from finding on top of a moving AAV. |
| .8 | Personnel do not ride in a moving AAV with more than their heads and shoulders extending above the hatch. |
| .9 | No smoking is allowed. |
| .10 | AAVs maintain a distance of at least 30 meters during periods of unrestricted visibility, or less during periods of restricted visibility while waterborne. |

| .11 | AAV crewmember positions himself at the aft personnel door to ensure the door is secure during all waterborne operations. |
|-----------------|---|
| .12 | All personnel are kept clear of the HG radio antenna on the |
| EVALUATOR INSTR | RUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATORS | |

<u>HELMETS</u>

All personnel manning AAVs wear helmets. Crewmembers normally wear communication helmets while passengers wear the Kevlar issue helmet.

LIFE PRESERVERS

All personnel wear the inflatable type life preserver at all times during water operations. AAV unit provides life preservers for crewman and embarked personnel. Inflatable type life jackets will be worn around the neck while vehicles are waterborne, and not contained in the carrying case at the belt.

MPS 10B.06 - NBC OPERATIONS

TASK: 10B.06.01 PREPARE FOR NBC OPERATIONS

 $\frac{\texttt{CONDITION(S)}}{\texttt{CONDITION(S)}} : \text{ Threat forces have employed NBC munitions in the area destroying/disrupting operations and facilities. Due to the threat, passive and active defense measures must be used for survival of the AAV company.}$

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | AAV company develops a plan for outlining procedures for enemy NBC strikes and reports required. |
|-----|--|
| .2 | All individuals in the company have the NBC defense equipment authorized by the unit Table of Equipment (T/E) . |
| .3 | All unit NBC defense equipment authorized by T/E is operationally ready and distributed to designated and trained |
| .4 | NBC equipment shortages are identified and replacements |
| .5 | Decontamination equipment (mops, brooms, shovels, rags, etc.) and bulk decontaminates are assembled and ready for transport to a decontamination area. |
| .6 | M11 decontamination equipment is requested and units are filled (water used for training). |
| .7 | NBC trained personnel are available on a 24-hour a day basis. |
| .8 | MOPP level is established by the supported unit and AAV company personnel are at or above that level. |
| .9 | Company decon teams are able to utilize the appropriate radiac detection units and report the readings to higher |
| .10 | Company staff thoroughly understand MOPP levels for the control of exposure of personnel to chemical hazards. |
| .11 | All company personnel can identify NATO or threat NBC contamination markers. |
| .12 | Company dispersion utilizes terrain features for cover; concealment, and topographic shielding from NBC attack. |

 $\underline{\text{EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS}}\colon$ Provide the company with information to expect an imminent nuclear attack by the enemy, and integrate NBC scenarios with normal missions.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 10B.06.02 PREPARE FOR NUCLEAR ATTACK

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV company is informed that nuclear weapons have been theater of operations.

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE | | |
|--|---|--|--|
| .1 | Backup command, control, and communication procedures are | | |
| .2 | Subordinate/Displaced elements of the company are alerted. | | |
| .3 | The company continues the mission while implementing actions to minimize casualties and damage. | | |
| . 4 | The company implements protective measures, as directed by higher command element, consistent with the mission. | | |
| .5 | Personnel minimize exposure by rolling down sleeves, buttoning collars, and wearing additional clothing equal to a two | | |
| .6 | Personnel take cover in fighting positions, armored vehicles, existing shelters (basements, culverts, caves, tunnels, etc.), or as a last resort lie prone on the ground, face down and | | |
| .7 | External electronic equipment is protected from Electromagnetic Pulse (EMP) and Transient Radiation Effects on | | |
| .8 | Periodic monitoring is initiated, using the IM-174 radiac detector or the ${\rm AN/VDR-2}$ radiac set. | | |
| .9 | Vehicles are placed behind masking terrain. | | |
| .10 | All loose items, flammable/explosive items, food and water, which are not stored in AAVs, are secured and protected from | | |
| .11 | Company Marines are familiar with standard first aid procedures to provide self/buddy aid for nuclear blast and | | |
| EVALUATOR IN | ISTRUCTIONS: None. | | |
| KEY INDICATORS: | | | |
| | ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT | | |
| When a unit has been informed that a nuclear blast is imminent, the following precautionary measures should be taken: | | | |
| - On the C-7, only utilize the crew radios to save the MIQ and MSQ-115. | | | |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10B.0 | 06.03 RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK | | |
| $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: Nuclear attack is simulated by the detonation of an blast simulator or by other appropriate means. | | | |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE | | | |
| .1 Upon recognizing the attack, all personnel take immediate action to shield themselves from blast/heat of detonation. | | | |

| .2 | Chain of command and communications are maintained or reestablished. AAVs resume mission if possible. |
|---|---|
| .3 | NBC-1 initial and follow-up reports, as required, are rapidly submitted to the supported command element by personnel designated or responsible for collecting the information. Reliable and complete reports are rapidly forwarded, by secure |
| .4 | Casualties are given first aid and are evacuated to a medical treatment station as the mission permits. |
| .5 | Damage assessment is submitted by secure means to the supported headquarters per SOP. |
| .6 | Continuous monitoring is initiated, using the IM-174 radiac detector or the ${\rm AN/VDR-2}$ radiac set. |
| blast, heat, assessed by transmitters | STRUCTIONS: Evaluator will assess constructive casualties due to radiation, and Electromagnetic Pulse (EMP). EMP casualties will be the evaluator for all communications systems (antennas, receivers/) that are exposed (not in a covered or hardened icle) during the simulated nuclear detonation. RS: None. |
| | |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10B.0 | 6.04 RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR BLAST |
| company loca radiological effective do is furnished prepared is about 45 min | : A surface or subsurface nuclear detonation has occurred. tion is within the predicted fallout zone. An M5A2 fallout predictor, or substitute, is available. The unit gets wnwind message at least once every three hours. NBC-2 report to the company about 15 minutes after the detonation, or prepared by the company itself. An NBC-3 report is furnished utes after the detonation; NBC-5 report and/or contamination rovided about 4 hours after the detonation. |
| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | The company's primary mission is performed concurrently with all NBC actions. |
| .2 | The company is advised of estimated time of fallout arrival, and subordinate units are notified. |
| .3 | Continuous monitoring is maintained using the IM-174 detector or an $\Delta N/VDR-2$ radiac set. |
| .4 | Equipment, munitions, POL, food, and water are protected from |
| .5 | Personnel take protective measures to minimize fallout |
| .6 | $\ensuremath{NBC-4}$ reports are forwarded, as required, to the supported command element by secure means. |
| | |

| us | ne company's total dose information is measured, if possible, sing the IM-143 or AN/PDR-75 and reported to the supported command lement using available secure means. |
|------------------------|---|
| | sposure is minimized while the command element determines if elocation to a clean area is necessary. |
| | ersonnel are able to handle and provide first aid treatment to asualties in a nuclear environment. |
| .10 Ca | asualties and fatalities are assessed. |
| .11 Ve | ehicles are assessed for damage. |
| EVALUATOR INSTE | RUCTIONS: Commander is advised of estimated time of fallout |
| KEY INDICATORS: | • |
| | PERSONNEL PROTECTIVE MEASURES |
| Personnel take | the following measures to minimize fallout effects: |
| - Place a v | wet cloth across mouth and nose. |
| - Make the | AAV as air tight as possible. |
| - Utilize o | outer garments, such as ponchos, to the maximum extent possible. |
| - Keep the | inside of the vehicle as clean as possible. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10B.06.0 | 05 PERFORM RADIOLOGICAL DECONTAMINATION |
| personnel does | Fallout has ceased, and personnel and equipment are hazard to not allow time for the radiation to decay to a minimum level. cal situation permits hasty decontamination. Decontamination available. |
| STANDARDS: EVA | AL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 Co | ompany CO establishes decontamination priorities. |
| .2 A | hasty decontamination point is established out of the |
| .3 Mo | ovement to the decontaminated site is controlled and is |
| | econtamination personnel wear appropriate protective clothing and quipment. |
| | quipment and vehicles are decontaminated using appropriate spedient devices. (KI) |
| .6 Co | ontaminated areas are marked with NATO standard NBC markers. |
| .7 Ac | dequacy of decontamination is determined utilizing the AN/VDR-2. |

| MCC | 350 | 01.29 |
|-----|-----|-------|
| 17 | MAY | 99 |

| .8 | Contaminated materials are discarded according to tactical SOP, marked as contaminated, and location is provided to |
|-----|---|
| .9 | Decontamination personnel are decontaminated, as necessary. |
| .10 | Operational Exposure Guidance (OEG) is not exceeded. |
| .11 | Total dose information for the operational decontamination area is recorded and reported utilizing the AN/VDR-2 to |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

EXPEDIENT DECONTAMINATION

The rule of thumb for expedient decontamination is wet on wet and dry on dry. If the contaminate is wet, utilize buckets of water or if possible, splash the AAVs into a body of water. If the contaminant is dry, simply brush it off the vehicles and personnel.

TASK: 10B.06.06 CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The tactical situation forces the AAV company to cross a contaminated area.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The company's reconnaissance element is provided the turnback |
|-----|--|
| . 2 | The reconnaissance element is dispatched to reconnoiter new |
| .3 | The company crosses expected contaminated area while employing contamination avoidance techniques. |
| .4 | Operational Exposure Guidance (OEG) is not exceeded. |
| .5 | After clearing the contaminated area, the degree of personnel and equipment contamination is determined, using the |
| .6 | Decontamination priorities are established and performed, as |
| .7 | The company's total dose information is recorded, using available IM-143s or AN/PDR-75s, and reported to higher |

 $\underline{\text{EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS}}\colon$ The evaluator will provide the AAV company with turnback and dose rates, if higher headquarters does not.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 10B.06.07 PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The company receives a friendly nuclear STRIKWARN per FM 6-24 and 6-15. The AAV company is within Minimum Safe Distance (MSD) 2 to 3 miles.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Company commander applies the STRIKWARN to the situation map within 5 minutes after message receipt. |
|-----|---|
| .2 | Pertinent information regarding the planned detonation time of burst, ground zero, fallout coverage, MSD, etc., is available |
| .3 | Unit is advised of its vulnerability to the burst (within MSD 1, 2 or 3) and residual contamination (within predicted |
| .4 | Unit is advised of the measure needed to prevent casualties, damage, and extended interference with the mission. |
| .5 | The company implements protective measures, as directed by higher headquarters, consistent with the mission. |
| .6 | Personnel minimize exposure by rolling down sleeves, buttoning collars, and wearing additional clothing equal to a |
| .7 | Personnel take cover in fighting holes, bunkers, armored vehicles, existing shelters (basements, culverts, caves, tunnels, etc.), or lie prone on open ground. |
| .8 | Vehicles are placed behind masking terrain. |
| .9 | External electronic equipment is protected from EMP and Transient Radiation Effects on Electronics (TREE). (KI) |
| .10 | All loose items (small weapons, tools, etc.) and highly flammable/explosive items (POL, propellants, etc.) are placed in armored vehicles or shelters. |
| .11 | Company commander acknowledges the warning before the expected time of burst. All subordinate/detached elements have been warned and protective measures implemented. |

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: Evaluator simulates nuclear detonation with an artillery or nuclear blast simulator, or informs the unit that nuclear blast has occurred. Evaluator assesses casualties and damage to unprotected personnel and equipment.

KEY INDICATORS:

ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT

When an AAV company has been informed that a nuclear blast is imminent, the following precautionary measure should be taken:

- On the C-7, only utilize the crew's radio to save the MIQs and MIQ-115.

TASK: 10B.06.08 PREPARE FOR CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AAV company is informed that chemical weapons have theater of operations and that a chemical attack is imminent.

| STANDARDS: I | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
|----------------------|--|
| .1 | The company has a plan which addresses chemical defense/decontamination procedures. |
| .2 | All company elements, if applicable, are directed to increase MOPP consistent with mission, temperature, work rate, and supported commander's guidance. |
| .3 | Mission-essential tasks that require a high degree of manual dexterity or physical strength, and are difficult to perform in MOPP 4 are identified. Alternate methods, such as allowing more time, rotating or assigning additional personnel, are |
| .4 | Company personnel achieved designated MOPP level within the |
| .5 | The buddy system is established to facilitate monitoring/treatment for chemical agent poisoning and |
| .6 | The company continues the primary mission while implementing all actions to minimize casualties and damage. |
| .7 | Portions of essential equipment, munitions, POL, food, and water supplies that cannot be placed in a shelter are covered with expendable or readily decontaminated tarps, shelter |
| .8 | Detector paper is affixed to visible, horizontal surfaces of protective clothing and on equipment, munitions, etc. |
| .9 | Company personnel have complete, M258A1, and M291 kits. |
| .10 | The company determines and reports potential decontamination sites to higher headquarters. |
| .11 | Available chemical agent alarms are set up and monitored. |
| .12 | Protective NBC equipment and supplies are properly used and maintained in a high state of serviceability. |
| .13 | Company personnel demonstrate a knowledge of chemical agent |
| .14 | Radio operators pass and receive alert/warning messages via headset while wearing the protective mask. |
| | STRUCTIONS: CO/OIC is informed that chemical weapons have been used er of operations and that attack is imminent. |
| KEY INDICATOR | RS: None. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10B.06 | 6.09 RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK |

 $\underline{\mathtt{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV company in support is subjected to a chemical agent attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE _ Upon hearing a chemical alarm, personnel take immediate protective measures followed by treatment/decontamination of .2 ____ Personnel automatically mask upon notification of any enemy artillery, rocket, or air attack/overlight or upon perceiving a suspicious odor, airborne droplets/mist, or smoke from an _ Company personnel do not unmask until given the command "UNMASK" by their immediate commander. .4 ____ The AAV company is able to perform it's mission for at least four hours while in MOPP 4. .5 ____ The type of chemical agent is identified utilizing the M256 kit or M8 paper, and reported to the supported unit. _ Contamination is located and marked with NATO standard _ Location and type of contamination is reported to the supported command element. __ The supported commander determines if immediate relocation to a clean area is necessary or possible, consistent with the .9 ____ The supported commander/company commander determines priorities for decontamination. .10 ____ WIAs are decontaminated, wrapped and marked as contaminated if decontamination is not performed, and evacuated. Medical treatment facility is alerted. .11 ____ KIAs are wrapped, marked as contaminated, and evacuated as mission permits. Graves registration collection point is _ Unmasking procedures is followed when directed by command. _ WIEs are evacuated to the medical treatment facility as

.15 ____ Detector kits are serviced and returned to operation.

.16 ____ Expended chemical defense items are replaced, as required.

___ KIAs are evacuated to the graves registration collection point as

.17 $_$ CO/OIC adjusts MOPP level, as required.

mission permits.

.18 ____ Company personnel are able to handle and provide first aid treatment to casualties in a chemical environment.

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: Training site should support the type of activities being conducted and permit safe use of simulators and devices. Selected personnel are presented decontamination training kits and first aid treatment training devices to "treat designated casualties." Every attempt must be made

to provide a realistic situation through devices, scenarios, or other aids developed through innovation. The key to a thorough evaluation is a realistic, believable, well supported situation imposed by the trainer/evaluator.

KEY INDICATORS:

CHEMICAL CASUALTIES

Chemical casualties are described as:

- Personnel without mask and hood within arms reach, without decontamination kits, or not wearing chemical protective clothing.
- Personnel not taking immediate corrective actions upon perceiving the attack, hearing a chemical agent alarm, being ordered to mask, or using incorrect masking procedures (not masking within nine seconds), or making incorrect use of decontamination kits/first aid treatment items.
- Marines who unmask or otherwise assume a lesser degree of MOPP without being authorized to do so.

UNMASKING PROCEDURES

The unmasking procedures outlined below are to be initiated after being notified to do so by higher headquarters or the immediate commander. They show procedures to be used with and without the M256 chemical agent detector kit.

- 1. Initiate unmasking when a detector kit is available:
- a. Use the detector at different points in the perimeter to determine the presence of chemical agents.
- b. If no agent is detected the senior Marine present will designate two or three individual Marines to unmask for five minutes and then remask for 10 minutes. This is to be done in the shade. Weapons are removed from individuals prior to unmasking.
- c. If no symptoms appear, unmasking unit will accomplish this by 1/3 on the unit intervals. However, they remain alert for symptoms.
- 2. When no detector kit is available, the following unmasking procedures will be adhered to:
- a. Two or three Marines take a deep breath, hold it, keep their eyes open, break the seal on their tasks and hold the masks open for 15 seconds.
- b. With masks resealed and cleared, the Marines are checked for symptoms for the next 10 minutes. This occurs in the shade.
- c. If no symptoms appear, the same Marines break the seal of their masks, take two or three deep breaths, then clear and reseal their masks. Weapons are removed from the individuals prior to unmasking.
- d. If after 10 minutes no symptoms have appeared, the same Marine unmask for five minutes, and then remask.
 - e. If after 10 more minutes no symptoms have appeared, the rest of the

unit may unmask. However, they remain alert for symptoms.

NOTE: After each unmasking, always notify higher headquarters.

TASK: 10B.06.10 PERFORM PARTIAL DECONTAMINATION

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: Company personnel and equipment have been contaminated by agent. Emergency decontamination has been accomplished. Time is not available for complete decontamination. The hazard is such that partial decontamination is required. All personnel are maintaining a maximum MOPP.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Company personnel decontaminate individual weapons and equipment using appropriate decontamination kits. |
|----|--|
| .2 | Extent of decontamination is determined and the company commande establishes decontamination priorities. |
| .3 | Contaminated protective covers are removed, decontaminated, or |
| .4 | Decontamination procedures are appropriate to items being decontaminated. (KI) |

- .5 ____ Company personnel conduct hasty decontamination of equipment and vehicles using appropriate expedient devices.
- .6 ____ Adequacy of decontamination is determined. If inadequate:
 - a. Procedures are repeated.
 - b. Decontamination support is requested.
 - c. Risk of using equipment is accepted.
- .7 ____ Contaminated materials are discarded according to tactical SOP, marked as contaminated, and location provided to
- .8 ____ OIC reduces MOPP level, if required.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

<u>DECONTAMINATION PROCEDURES</u>

- 1. Initial decontamination of company equipment, vehicles, and crew-served weapons may be accomplished by:
- a. Removing all gross liquid contamination with sticks or other improvised devices which are buried after use.
- b. Utilizing M11 decontamination apparatuses filled with DS2 to spray areas frequently used or touched. (Water is used to simulate DS2 in a training environment).

- 2. Contaminated items that may need special decontamination treatment are:
- a. POL, food, and water containers and munitions. These are washed with soapy water, rinsed, and thoroughly air dried.
- b. Communications equipment and other electronic equipment. Decontaminated with hot air, by weathering, or all metal parts are wiped with rags soaks with DS2 (water is used for training purpose).
- c. Optical instruments are blotted with rags and then wiped with lens cleaning solution or organic solvent.
- 3. Adequacy of decontamination is determined using the chemical agent detector kit. If contamination is still present, decontaminate again.
- 4. Hasty decontamination procedures can be developed in the vehicle wash down phase and the MOPP gear exchange phase.
- a. Vehicle wash down phase: Vehicle washdown should be completed within an hour for best results. If available, the most expedient manner for AAVs would be to "splash" a body of water such as a river or the ocean. The tactical situation may require an M12A1 decontamination apparatus be requested from the supported headquarters.
- b. MOPP gear exchange phase: MOPP gear exchange is the exchange of protective clothing as soon as the tactical situation permits or within six hours of being contaminated. Proper security must be arranged. The buddy system is utilized. The area needs to be continually checked to be sure it is free of contamination. Once unmasking procedures have been completed, personnel may unmask to provide relief from the MOPP 4 posture.

TASK: 10B.06.11 COORDINATE FOR COMPLETE DECONTAMINATION OF EQUIPMENT

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV company's equipment has been contaminated by a Emergency decontamination has been accomplished. Time is now available for complete decontamination, and support is available upon request.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| Company commander request and receives route clearance to Personnel Decontamination Station/Equipment Decontamination Station (PDS/EDS) assembly area. Advance party (personnel to augment decontamination operation and establish security) is Main body arrives at PDS/EDS assembly area and organizes for Decontamination begins as scheduled. The company reorganizes in a clean area upwind of residual contamination and prepares for resumption of mission. | .1 | The company commander coordinates with the decontamination unit as to his time of arrival at the Decon site and the supplies, equipment, and personnel to be furnished by the contaminated company. The estimated time of completion is |
|---|-----|---|
| .4 Decontamination begins as scheduled5 The company reorganizes in a clean area upwind of residual | . 2 | Decontamination Station/Equipment Decontamination Station (PDS/EDS) assembly area. Advance party (personnel to augment decontamination |
| .5 The company reorganizes in a clean area upwind of residual | .3 | Main body arrives at PDS/EDS assembly area and organizes for |
| | .4 | Decontamination begins as scheduled. |
| | .5 | |

.6 ____ CO/OIC adjusts MOPP level, as required.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

10-B-51

SECTION 10C

ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN PLATOON

INDEX OF TASKS

| | | PAGE |
|---------------------------|--|---------|
| MPS 10C.01 - ASSIGNMENT | TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS | |
| 1) TASK 10C.01.01 | CONDUCT INITIAL PLANNING | 10-C-1 |
| 2) TASK 10C.01.02 | RESPOND TO SUPPORTED UNIT | 10-C-2 |
| 3) TASK 10C.01.03 | COORDINATE GATHERING AND DISSEMINATION OF INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION | 10-C-2 |
| 4) TASK 10C.01.04 | COORDINATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING | 10-C-3 |
| 5) TASK 10C.01.05 | COORDINATE LOGISTICS PLANNING | 10-C-4 |
| 6) TASK 10C.01.06 | CONDUCT COMBAT REPORTING | 10-C-5 |
| MPS 10C.02 - AMPHIBIOUS | OPERATIONS | |
| 1) TASK 10C.02.01 | CONDUCT PLANNING | 10-C-7 |
| 2) TASK 10C.02.02 | PREPARE FOR EMBARKATION | 10-C-8 |
| 3) TASK 10C.02.03 | EMBARK AAV | 10-C-8 |
| 4) TASK 10C.02.04 | PREPARE FOR DEBARKATION | 10-C-9 |
| 5) TASK 10C.02.05 | CONDUCT DEBARKATION | 10-C-11 |
| 6) TASK 10C.02.06 | CONDUCT SHIP TO SHORE MOVEMENT | 10-C-11 |
| 7) TASK 10C.02.07 | EVACUATE DISABLED AAV | 10-C-13 |
| 8) TASK 10C.02.08 | RECOVERY OF WATERBORNE AAV | 10-C-14 |
| MPS 10C.03 - SUBSEQUENT | OPERATIONS ASHORE | |
| 1) TASK 10C.03.01 | PREPARE TO OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA | 10-C-15 |
| 2) TASK 10C.03.02 AREA | PREPARE FOR TACTICAL MOVEMENT FROM ASSEMBLY | 10-C-15 |
| 3) TASK 10C.03.03 | CONDUCT PASSAGE OF LINES | 10-C-18 |
| 4) TASK 10C.03.04 | RELIEF IN PLACE | 10-C-19 |
| 5) TASK 10C.03.05 | CROSS THE SP/LOD | 10-C-20 |
| 6) TASK 10C.03.06 | EMPLOY MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES | 10-C-21 |
| 7) TASK 10C.03.07 | MOVE BY TRAVELING | 10-C-22 |
| 8) TASK 10C.03.08 | MOVE BY TRAVELING OVERWATCH | 10-C-22 |
| 9) TASK 10C.03.09 | MOVE BY BOUNDING OVERWATCH | 10-C-22 |

MCO 3501.29 17 MAY 99

| | 10) | TASK | 10C.03.10 | CONDUCT TACTICAL HALT | 10-C-23 |
|-----|------|---------------|----------------------|---|---------|
| | 11) | TASK | 10C.03.11 | CONDUCT NIGHT MOVEMENT | 10-C-24 |
| | 12) | TASK | 10C.03.12 | CONDUCT AAV GUNNERY OPERATIONS | 10-C-24 |
| | 13) | TASK | 10C.03.13 | CONDUCT AN ASSAULT | 10-C-26 |
| | 14) | TASK | 10C.03.14 | ESTABLISH DEFENSIVE POSITIONS | 10-C-27 |
| | 15) | TASK | 10C.03.15 | EMPLOYMENT OF AAV WEAPONS IN THE DEFENSE | 10-C-29 |
| | 16) | TASK | 10C.03.16 | EMPLOYMENT OF SMOKE SCREEN | 10-C-30 |
| MPS | 10C. | .04 - | SUPPLY AND | MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS | |
| | 1) | TASK | 100.04.01 | CONDUCT RECOVERY OPERATIONS | 10-C-31 |
| | 2) | TASK | 100.04.02 | CONDUCT SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS | 10-C-32 |
| MPS | 10C. | 05 - | CONTINUING | ACTIONS BY MARINES | |
| | 1) | TASK | 100.05.01 | IMPLEMENTING DISCIPLINE | 10-C-34 |
| | 2) | TASK | 10C.05.02 | CONDUCT PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) | 10-C-34 |
| | 3) | TASK | 100.05.03 | DEMONSTRATE DISPERSION | 10-C-35 |
| | 4) | TASK | 10C.05.04 | EMPLOY COVER AND CONCEALMENT | 10-C-36 |
| | 5) | TASK | 10C.05.05 | REACT TO DIRECT FIRES | 10-C-37 |
| | 6) | TASK | 10C.05.06 | REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE | 10-C-37 |
| | 7) | TASK | 10C.05.07 | ESTABLISH TACTICAL RADIO COMMUNICATION | 10-C-38 |
| | 8) | TASK | 10C.05.08 | RESPOND TO ENEMY ELECTRONIC WARFARE (EW) | 10-C-38 |
| | 9) | TASK | 10C.05.09 | RESPOND TO ENEMY AIR THREAT | 10-C-39 |
| | 10) | TASK | 10C.05.10 | PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR | 10-C-41 |
| | 11) | TASK | 10C.05.11 | PROCESS CASUALTY EVACUATIONS | 10-C-41 |
| | 12) | | 10C.05.12 AUTIONS | IMPLEMENTING AAV OPERATIONAL SAFETY | 10-C-42 |
| MPS | 10C. | .06 - | NBC OPERAT | <u>ions</u> | |
| | 1) | TASK | 10C.06.01 | PREPARE FOR NBC OPERATIONS | 10-C-44 |
| | 2) | TASK | 10C.06.02 | PREPARE FOR NUCLEAR ATTACK | 10-C-44 |
| | 3) | TASK ATTAC | 10C.06.03 CK | RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR | 10-C-45 |
| | 4) | TASK BLAST | | RESPOND TO RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR | 10-C-46 |

| 5) | TASK 10C.06.05 | PERFORM RADIOLOGICAL DECONTAMINATION | 10-C-47 |
|-----|--------------------------------|--|---------|
| 6) | TASK 10C.06.06 | CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA | 10-C-48 |
| 7) | TASK 10C.06.07 | PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE | 10-C-48 |
| 8) | TASK 10C.06.08 | PREPARE FOR CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK | 10-C-49 |
| 9) | TASK 10C.06.09 | RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK | 10-C-50 |
| 10) | TASK 10C.06.10 | PERFORM PARTIAL CHEMICAL DECONTAMINATION | 10-C-52 |
| 11) | TASK 10C.06.11 OF EQUIPMENT | COORDINATE FOR COMPLETE DECONTAMINATION | 10-C-54 |

MPS 10C.01 - ASSIGNMENT TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS

TASK: 10C.01.01 CONDUCT INITIAL PLANNING

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: An AAV platoon is given the mission to support tactical as an attached unit or in direct support.

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
|------------|--|
| .1 | Platoon commander promptly reports to the supported commander |
| .2 | Platoon commander conducts mission analysis. |
| .3 | Platoon commander issues a warning order to section leaders. |
| . 4 | Platoon sergeant coordinates all maintenance, recovery, and logistic requirements of AAV unit and establishes appropriate support arrangement. (KI) |
| .5 | Platoon commander develops an AAV estimate of supportability. |
| .6 | Platoon commander participates in a leaders recon with both the supported unit and other supporting element leaders to ensure AAVs are fully integrated into the supported unit's |
| .7 | Platoon commander recommends routes/axis of advance, determines time and distance of AAV movement, employment methods, and communication requirements to the supported unit. |
| .8 | Incorporate Operational Risk Management (ORM) into planning. |
| .9 | Platoon commander develops appropriate plans after receipt of the supported commander's decision. |
| .10 | Platoon commander attends the issuance of the supported unit's five paragraph order. |
| .11 | Platoon commander issues his five paragraph order. |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The focus of this task is on the AAV platoon leaders as they fulfill their basic responsibilities to the supported unit. The evaluator should note that some of the requirements are one time actions and some are repetitive actions that will reoccur as the tactical situation changes.

to the supported unit or parent command.

.12 ____ All changes in operational readiness of AAVs are promptly reported

KEY INDICATORS:

TIME MANAGEMENT

Ensure commander allocate 2/3 of available time for planning and preparation by subordinate units. Time is allocated at all levels. In order to fulfill requirements, commanders manage available time to ensure that appropriate rest (sleep) periods are available (tactical situation permitting) in order to ensure that peak efficiency and alertness is maintained.

OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)

Ensure commanders utilize the five step ORM process, per MCO 3500.27, in their planning which includes: identify hazards, assess hazards, make risk decisions, implement controls, and supervise.

TYPES OF SUPPORT

Ensure that the type of support to be provided is determined for logistical purposes. In direct support the parent unit is responsible for logistical needs. If attached, the supported unit is responsible for logistical needs. The third category, general support, denotes that the AAV unit is supporting the entire force without priority any given element. In general support, the parent command retains command, control, and logistics responsibility.

ROUTES/AXIS OF ADVANCE

Ensure that routes to be followed are carefully analyzed to include the use of METT-TSL.

TASK: 10C.01.02 RESPOND TO SUPPORTED UNIT

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV platoon is assigned the mission to support The mission requires the capability to launch from ship to objective and/or operate on land during all periods of visibility

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Platoon commander adheres to all applicable SOPs. |
|----|--|
| .2 | The platoon complies with the supported unit's operations |
| .3 | Enters tactical and command nets of the supported unit command element per the operations order. |
| .4 | Platoon commander provides input to the supported unit, consistent with changing tactical requirements, concerning AAV |
| .5 | Operational reports are submitted per the operations order in a timely and accurate manner. |

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: The evaluator determines if the AAV unit adhered to the supported unit's operations SOP.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 10C.01.03 COORDINATE GATHERING AND DISSEMINATION OF INTELLIGENCE

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV platoon is assigned the mission to support The supported company has intelligence data to be provided to the unit.

| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE |
|---|
| .1 Platoon uses procedures for handling intelligence matters, and addresses interoperability with supported units. |
| .2 The platoon commander requests intelligence based on METT-TSL. |
| .3 All classified material is safeguarded and limited access appropriately allowed. |
| .4 Platoon commander stresses intelligence awareness for all assigned personnel. (KI) |
| .5 Platoon commander ensures intelligence information is disseminated to section elements. |
| .6 Platoon commanders know the procedures to be used in handling EPWs (See Task 10C.5.10, PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR). |
| EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATORS: |
| INTELLIGENCE AWARENESS: |
| Intelligence awareness includes: |
| - Knowledge of collection means available. |
| - Understanding of intelligence capabilities and limitations. |
| - Emphasis on OPSEC at all levels. |
| - Rapid reporting of raw combat information. |
| - Exploitation of information gleaned from EPWs. |
| TASK: 10C.01.04 COORDINATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING |
| $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV platoon is assigned the mission to support |
| The supported unit is conducting communications planning for all elements. The enemy has the ability to conduct ESM and ECM operations. |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 Platoon commander coordinates with supported unit's |
| .2 All required communications nets are identified. |
| .3 It is ensured that an adequate number of frequencies, FH data and Net IDs are allocated. |
| .4 Plans for communications redundancy, simplicity, and brevity. |
| ENCLOSURE (1) |

| .5 | Plans for the use of communications procedures contained in the supported unit's SOP or prearranged signals and other visual means which allow for brevity. |
|----------------------|--|
| .6 | Platoon commander identifies any interoperability problems. |
| .7 | Platoon commander maintains a copy of the supported unit's communications SOP. |
| .8 | The platoon commander stresses communication security awareness for all personnel. |
| .9 | The platoon commander reviews the communications plan of the supported unit concerning secure voice equipment, correct key lists and edition numbers, and verifies that the AAV unit has |
| .10 | Wire communications is stressed when in static or defensive |
| .11 | The platoon provides the supported unit's communications personnel with AAV-7A1 briefing/training. |
| .12 | Communications reports are included in the reports control |
| .13 | The platoon uses alternate communications methods as needed. |
| EVALUATOR INS | STRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATOR | <u>RS</u> : |
| | ALTERNATE COMMUNICATIONS |
| Communication | |
| | |
| | atoon demonstrates awareness of communications capabilities and during planning. |
| | atoon is prepared to erect expedient antenna systems, utilize nals, and lay wire, when appropriate. |
| - Display | ys cognizance of importance of communications security. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10C.03 | 1.05 COORDINATE LOGISTICS PLANNING |
| mission requ | The AAV platoon is assigned in direct support of tactical The ires the capability to launch from ship to objective and/or operate periods of visibility. The supported unit OpOrd calls for full use |
| STANDARDS: I | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | Platoon commander conducts liaison with the supported company's staff immediately upon receipt of the mission. |
| ENCLOSURE (1 | |

| . 2 | Platoon commander identifies AAV combat service support (CSS) requirements to the supported unit S-4 during the planning |
|-----|---|
| .3 | AAVs comply with prescribed loads established by the |
| .4 | The platoon sergeant coordinates with his parent unit concerning any logistics requirements beyond the supported |
| .5 | The platoon commander ensures vehicle recovery procedures are |
| .6 | The platoon commander determines availability of AAV unit logistics and support vehicles, and informs the supported or |
| .7 | Emergency resupply procedures are established. |
| .8 | The platoon commander completes required CSS reports as designated in the reports controls system. |
| .9 | The platoon commander/platoon sergeant establishes liaison with the MAGTF CSS element as required for higher level logistic support not within the capability of the supported or |
| .10 | The platoon sergeant has a system to rapidly and correctly identify required repair parts and to request them through the appropriate supporting or parent unit. |

 $\underline{\text{EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS}}\colon$ Evaluator examines the platoon's performance throughout all phases of operations.

KEY INDICATORS:

LOGISTIC SUPPORT

Ensure the AAV unit SOP covers:

- Procedure for requesting support when in either a general or direct support role.
- Request formats.
- Standardized loads for resupply.
- Specific procedures for recovery operations.
- Procedure for 3rd echelon maintenance under field conditions.
- Procedure for replacement of major end items.

Ensure the supported unit is briefed on logistic requirements.

TASK: 10C.01.06 CONDUCT COMBAT REPORTING

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AAV platoon is assigned in direct support of tactical The supported unit's SOP and OpOrd Order contain the required reports and their

submission times. Additional logistic and/or administration reports may be required by the AAV platoon's parent organization.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The platoon commander develops a system to comply with supported unit's operations SOP and OpOrd Order reports |
|----|--|
| .2 | The type of report, format, and submission requirements are |
| .3 | The platoon commander completes all reports required to the parent organization as scheduled. |

4 ____ Reports are submitted on time and are complete and accurate.

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: Evaluator obtains a full listing of all required reports prior to initiation of his evaluation of the platoon and ascertains that the supported unit requirements were available.

KEY INDICATORS:

REPORTS CONTROL

Ensure OpOrd or SOP stress brevity and include the following:

- Time of submission of required reports.
- Reports are submitted on "as required basis".
- Report formats permit "exception only" reporting to facilitate brevity.
- Method of submission for reports and alternate means.

MPS 10C.02 - AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS

TASK: 10C.02.01 CONDUCT PLANNING

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AAV platoon is in direct support of a ground unit mission to conduct an amphibious assault. The AAV platoon is embarked on ATF shipping, and has begun detailed planning.

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
|------------|---|
| .1 | The AAV platoon commander reports to the supported unit commander, attends the initial briefing, and receives the |
| .2 | The platoon commander performs mission analysis. (KI) |
| .3 | The platoon commander prepares an AAV estimate of |
| .4 | The platoon commander assists the supported unit in the preparation of planning documents. |
| .5 | The platoon commander makes recommendations on AAV utilization during the ship to objective movements to include formations, |
| .6 | The platoon commander coordinates AAV participation during the conduct of rehearsals and briefs platoon on mission. |
| .7 | The platoon commander coordinates the details of organization/embarkation of his AAVs. |
| .8 | All aspects of AAV employment are coordinated with naval control groups and ATF ships involved. |
| .9 | The platoon sergeant determines maintenance requirements for AAVs, to include recommended system for maintenance, location of maintenance personnel and equipment. |
| .10 | The platoon commander/platoon sergeant determines requirements of AAVs for fuel, oil, and other lubricants during operations ashore, and coordinates them with the |
| .11 | The platoon sergeant plans for the employment of signals, marking devices, etc., for AAV control during night landings and operations ashore (e.g. GAIL lights, chemical lights). |
| .12 | The platoon commander lists safety requirement for embarking in AAVs and reviews the safety training programs for the unit |
| .13 | The platoon commander coordinates with his section leaders and crew chiefs on plans for rehearsal of infantry embarking |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

MISSION ANALYSIS

Ensure that the AAV platoon commander's analysis of the mission is per METT-T-SL.

- Ensure platoon commander develops plan for any special support.
- Develops bump plan for any disabled AAV.

TASK: 10C.02.02 PREPARE FOR EMBARKATION

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AAV platoon is tasked to support an amphibious embarkation plan is being developed by the supported unit based on the scheme of maneuver and loading plan.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ AAV representatives attend planning conferences as directed.
- The platoon commander completes required embarkation documentation and submits those tables in a timely manner.
- .3 ____ Preparations for the embarkation of AAVs is completed prior to the arrival of assault shipping.
- .4 ____ The platoon sergeant develops plans for loading of AAVs in the correct sequence aboard assault shipping.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator must be familiar with the various documents required for the completion of the embarkation plan contained in FMFM 4-2, Amphibious Embarkation.

KEY INDICATORS:

PLANNING CONFERENCES

Should include:

- Embarkation of vehicles and crews.
- $\mbox{-}$ Embarkation of command, maintenance, and communication personnel requested to support vehicle commitments.
- Loading of supplies and equipment such as fuel, ammunition (both smoke and antipersonnel), and repair parts to support embarked vehicles.
 - Staffing and equipping ATF ships designated as AAV repair ships.

TASK: 10C.02.03 EMBARK AAV

| STANDARDS: E | VAL: Y; N; NE |
|---|--|
| | The platoon commander/sergeant ensures surf report has been submitted per AAV parent unit SOP. |
| | Crew chiefs ensure all embarked personnel are wearing a serviceable life jacket with inflation cartridges and that a proper safety brief is conducted. |
| | The platoon commander ensures positive communication is established with the ships |
| | The platoon commander/platoon sergeant ensures a personnel manifest of all embarked Marines is submitted prior to |
| | The platoon sergeant ensures prewater operation checklists are submitted by crew chiefs prior to splashing. |
| .6 | The platoon sergeant ensures that rescue vehicles are |
| | Loading is completed as previously coordinated with the ATF representatives at the planning conference. |
| | The platoon sergeant ensures AAVs are gripped down with appropriate devices on board ship. |
| EVALUATOR INST | TRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATORS: | |
| | RESCUE VEHICLES |
| Ensure that while all vehicles are potential rescue vehicles, there is an AAV designated as the primary rescue vehicle. | |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10C.02 | .04 PREPARE FOR DEBARKATION |
| rehearsals, and | While embarked aboard ATF shipping, the AAV platoon has plan nd the landing plan has been adjusted and promulgated in its final TF has imposed EMCON. |
| STANDARDS: E | VAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 7 | The platoon commander conducts surf analysis based on latest |
| .2 | The platoon commander conducts final preparation under EMCON. |
| .3 | The platoon commander attends ship pre-launch conference. |

| . 4 | The platoon commander coordinates with ATF representatives on conduct of launch. (KI) |
|-----|---|
| .5 | Platoon personnel are briefed on conduct of launch. |
| .6 | The platoon sergeant ensures ships ventilation fans are turned on before engines are started and warmed up. |
| .7 | AAVs are marked with temporary chalk marks, etc., for ease of identification for embarked Marines. |
| .8 | Crews have completed embarkation rehearsal and safety briefs are conducted with embarked infantry per the AAV unit SOP. |
| .9 | Crews release, remove, and store the grippes in the proper |
| .10 | Crews embark troops and equipment per published time |
| .11 | Crews ensure all gear is properly stored and secured. |
| .12 | The platoon commander ensures that the platoon sergeant collects and submits signed and verified manifest roster and pre-water checklist to ship's 1st Lieutenant and ensures |

KEY INDICATORS:

COORDINATION PREPARATIONS

Ensure that the platoon commander discusses the following with naval representatives and the AAV crews:

- Type of launch
- Weather, sea and tidal conditions Launch sequence
- Prelaunch warm up time and sequence Ballast conditions
- Time for undogging AAVs

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

- Assignment of boat teams to AAVs
- Time to load man AAVs
- Staging AAVs
- Time to launch
- Launch signals
- Barriers
- Radio checks per EMCON conditions
- Beach characteristics
- Boat lane location
- Multiple vehicle launches from a single ship
- Simulates launches from multiple ships

- Launch interval

- Hand and arm signals
- Flag and flashing light signals
- Frequencies and call
- signs - Designation of wave guides and commanders
- Naval Control Group command and control
- Recovery of disabled vehicles
- Signals for emergency lifting of NGF
- Stalled vehicle
- procedures in well deck
- Magnetic compass information

TASK: 10C.02.05 CONDUCT DEBARKATION

| $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: Preparations for launch are being completed; AAVs are equipment are loaded. |
|--|
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 Crews make final preparation for launch on signal. (KI) |
| .2 AAVs move to the "ready line" in proper sequence. |
| .3 AAVs launch on the signal of well deck control officer. |
| .4 AAVs accelerate and maneuver to clear stern of ship. |
| .5 AAVs complete debarkation in sequence per published time |
| <u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u> : None. |
| KEY INDICATORS: |
| FINAL PREPARATION FOR LAUNCH |
| Preparations should include: |
| - Ensure leaders keep crews alert and advised of time remaining to launch. |
| - Ensure Navy well deck personnel are briefed and look for plenum indicator to be in "up" position before splash. |
| - Ensure AAVs move to ready line without ground guides. |
| TASK: 10C.02.06 CONDUCT SHIP TO SHORE MOVEMENT |
| $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: AAV platoon has completed debarkation from naval ships and towar the assigned beach. |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 The AAVs form in waves per the landing plan. (KI) |
| .2 The platoon commander maintains communications with the Primary Control Ship (PCS). (KI) |
| .3 Platoon maintains internal communications. |
| .4 Proper interval between AAVs is maintained. |
| .5 The LOD is crossed per the landing plan. |
| .6 Emergency operations/vehicle recoveries are conducted, as |
| .7 Wave commanders control maneuver and maintain the formation within the wave. |
| .8 Wave commander controls supporting fire of the AAV unit. |

| .9 | Smoke is utilized for screening, as required. |
|--------------|---|
| .10 | Wave commander controls all changes to waterborne formations outside the surf zone. |
| .11 | Wave commander controls movement of AAVs through cleared |
| EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. |

KEY INDICATORS:

LANDING PLAN

The landing plan is the plan of the supported unit commander for landing his troops, equipment, and supplies in the proper formations, on the assigned beaches and landing zones, and at the times dictated by the scheme of maneuver. It provides for the control afloat of landing craft, AAVs, helicopters, and floating dumps. Normally, the landing force landing plan is prepared as Appendix 3 (Landing Plan) to Annex B (Amphibious Operations) of the operations order. The documents/tables which deal with the troops and their equipment are included as tabs to the landing plan. The plan for landing supplies is contained in the appendix to the CSS plan. The AAV element commander prepares or helps to prepare the amphibious vehicle assignment table, the serial assignment table, the amphibious vehicle availability table, the amphibious vehicle employment plan, assault schedule, and the landing diagram.

ASSAULT SCHEDULE

The assault schedule prescribes the formation, composition, and timing of waves to be landed over the beaches. Both scheduled and nonscheduled waves are covered. Planning starts at the BLT level. BLT commanders determine the information and composition of their respective waves; scheduled and on call. The AAV commander provides input to the BLT commander and naval operations personnel on the PCS ship during the preparation of the assault schedule.

LANDING CRAFT AND AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE ASSIGNMENT TABLE

The landing craft and amphibious vehicle assignment table depicts the organization of troop units into boat teams and the assignment of boat teams to waves or to a serialized element of a nonscheduled wave. It is prepared by the commanding officer of troops of each ship. The AAV commander advises supported commanders and staffs with respect to vehicle capacity and methods of employment. AAV platoon commander on each ship assist in the preparation of this document.

SERIAL ASSIGNMENT TABLE

A serial is a group of troop units, supporting units, and equipment embarked on the same ship and which, for tactical or logistical reasons, are to be loaded on a specified beach at approximately the same time. The serial assignment table shows the following in tabulated form:

- Serial number.
- Title of unit.
- Approximate number of personnel in the serial.

- Material, vehicles, and equipment in the serial.
- Number and type of AAVs or landing craft required to transport the serial.
- Ship on which the serial is embarked.
- Remarks to include the landing category, designated wave, on call wave, or nonscheduled unit such remarks aid in rapid identification and location of the serial by control agencies.

LANDING SEQUENCE TABLE

Detailed plans for the ship to objective movement of nonscheduled units are set forth in the landing sequence table. It is used by troop and naval agencies as the principal document in executing and controlling the movement of nonscheduled units. The completed table forms the basis for embarkation and loading plans of the units concerned. The platoon commander advises as to which vehicle best meets the landing force requirement, where it would be best embarked, and other considerations pertaining to AAV employment.

LANDING DIAGRAM

The landing diagram is the graphic means to illustrate the plan for ship to objective movement of the scheduled waves of an assault unit. Each AAV is identified by two numbers: the first indicating the wave; the second, the position of the vehicle in the wave. The platoon commander prepares or assists in the preparation of this document.

WAVE CONTROL

The AAV wave commander maintains communications with the Primary Control Ship (PCS) and with the AAVs in the wave. The wave commander controls the wave to ensure it crosses the LOD on time, proceeds down the boat lane and touches down on time.

TASK: 10C.02.07 EVACUATE DISABLED AAV

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: An AAV platoon participating in a ship to objective its AAVs become disabled. A standby vehicle or boat is briefing moved into place to transfer the embarked personnel.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The platoon sergeant designates a specific AAV as rescue vehicle during surf and waterborne operations. |
|-----|--|
| .2 | Crew chiefs use appropriate day/night distress signals. |
| .3 | Wave commander and platoon sergeant are notified by radio/appropriate signals, of the nature of the problem and |
| . 4 | Crew member(s) immediately notify embarked personnel of |
| .5 | Driver keeps master switch on, locks brakes, shifts transmission to neutral, places mode selector switch to "water tracks", and advance throttle to 1800 RPMs if engine is |
| .6 | Driver attempts restart if engine is inoperable. |

| MCC | 350 | 1.29 |
|-----|-----|------|
| 17 | MAY | 99 |

| .7 Third | crewman assists embarked personnel topside for transfer. |
|--|---|
| | ked troops are correctly and safely transferred from the led vehicle. |
| .9 Crew | member closes the cargo hatch, after personnel are |
| .10 Evacu | ation procedures are completed for the disabled vehicle. |
| | members are knowledgeable of safety procedures to be used an AAV is sinking or when it has sunk. |
| EVALUATOR INSTRUCT | IONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATORS: | |
| | TRANSFER OF PERSONNEL |
| are inflated once time and remain as | enter the water, the crew will ensure that their life jackets topside. If time permits they will enter the water two at a "buddy teams". The rescue vehicle will position itself disabled vehicle. A boathook is used to assist in retrieving |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10C.02.08 | RECOVERY OF WATERBORNE AAV |
| <pre>CONDITION(S): An has notified the p</pre> | AAV is disabled in the water with no embarked troops. The creatlatoon sergeant. |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: | Y; N; NE |
| .1 The c | rew prepares the vehicle for towing. |
| .2 Rescu | e vehicle approaches vehicle on the leeward side. |
| .3 Tow 1 | ines are properly connected. |
| .4 All h | atches on both vehicles are closed. |
| | r keeps master switch on, unlocks brakes, ensures transmission neutral, towed vehicle is towed to nearest |

concerning towing procedures.

PREPARATION FOR TOWING

Driver keeps master switch "on" shifts transmission to neutral, places mode selector switch in "water tracks", and advances hand throttle to 1800 RPMs, if operable. Disconnects Power Take Off (PTO) and Hydrostatic Steering Unit (HSU) as necessary.

.6 ____ Tow lines are then disconnected and tow bar/cables are

 $\underline{\text{EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS}} \colon \quad \text{The evaluator must be familiar with the unit SOP}$

MPS 10C.03 - SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE

TASK: 10C.03.01 PREPARE TO OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}\colon \text{ An AAV platoon is ordered to move to an occupied assembly ready to embark Marines, their weapons, ammunition, and equipment.}$

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
|---------------------------|---|
| .1 | The platoon commander task organizes and assigns AAVs to the |
| .2 | The platoon sergeant coordinates resupply means. |
| .3 | The platoon commander considers OPSEC measures during the planning of the movement. |
| .4 | Platoon commander coordinates designated routes with the supported unit to resolve movement schedules, and identify known obstacles, location of friendly rear units, the location of any passed enemy units or obstacles, etc. |
| .5 | Platoon commander plans route(s) of march that offers the most cover and concealment. |
| .6 | Platoon commander develops, in coordination with the supported units, FSC, a fire support plan, and receives frequencies and call signs of fire control nets. |
| .7 | The platoon commander, in conducting liaison with the supported unit, dispatches a quartering party to coordinate the arrival at, and defense of, the assembly area. |
| .8 | The platoon commander demonstrates knowledge of planning and time and distance when designating control measures (check points, release points, etc.) to ensure an orderly move to the |
| .9 | The platoon commander provides details of vehicle markings to the supported unit in order for them to identify assigned |
| EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATO | RS: None. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10C.0 | 3.02 PREPARE FOR TACTICAL MOVEMENT FROM ASSEMBLY AREA |
| CONDITION(S) preparations | : The AAV platoon is attached in direct support of an making final for offensive operations. |
| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | The platoon commander acknowledges receipt of order. |
| .2 | The platoon commander issues warning order to sections/subordinate elements. (KI) |

ENCLOSURE (1)

| Vehicles are prepared for the operation, ammunition is replenished, and other special preparation requirements are completed prior to the commencement of startup procedures. 5 The platoon commander establishes liaison with the supported unit and receives further guidance from the commander. 6 The route/axis of advance to include control measures is 7 The platoon commander conducts a brief detailing AAV support during the combined infantry/AAV operation, and coordinates immediate actions, i.e., ambushes, air strikes, artillery 8 The platoon commander utilizes a terrain model, sketch, or other training aids when briefing the plan and/or conducting 9 The platoon movement order is issued to sections/subordinate elements. (KI) 10 The platoon commander allows the opportunity for AAV personnel questions and comments. 11 The AAV platoon commander ensures all AAV personnel understand the plan and are cognizant of their duties and 12 AAV crew members are briefed on rules of engagement. 13 Crew chiefs ensure all gear is properly secured on both the interior and exterior of vehicles. 14 Route from present location to SP/LOD is reconnoitered to determine the time the movement must be initiated in order to determine the time the movement must be initiated in order to The platoon commander conducts pre-combat inspection. 16 Deficiencies noted during pre-combat inspection are 17 The platoon commander coordinates with supported elements to verify signals/communications and actions to be taken upon 18 Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits. 19 Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen OPSEC vulnerability. 20 COMSEC material is issued, as appropriate. 21 Vehicles are started simultaneously. | .3 | Crew chiefs conduct vehicle operational checks. |
|---|--------------|---|
| and receives further guidance from the commander. 6 — The route/axis of advance to include control measures is 7 — The platoon commander conducts a brief detailing AAV support during the combined infantry/AAV operation, and coordinates immediate actions, i.e., ambushes, air strikes, artillery 8 — The platoon commander utilizes a terrain model, sketch, or other training aids when briefing the plan and/or conducting 9 — The platoon movement order is issued to sections/subordinate elements. (KI) 10 — The platoon commander allows the opportunity for AAV personnel questions and comments. 11 — The AAV platoon commander ensures all AAV personnel understand the plan and are cognizant of their duties and 12 — AAV crew members are briefed on rules of engagement. 13 — Crew chiefs ensure all gear is properly secured on both the interior and exterior of vehicles. 14 — Route from present location to SP/LOD is reconnoitered to determine the time the movement must be initiated in order to 15 — The platoon commander conducts pre-combat inspection. 16 — Deficiencies noted during pre-combat inspection are 17 — The platoon commander coordinates with supported elements to verify signals/communications and actions to be taken upon 18 — Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits. 19 — Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen OPSEC vulnerability. 20 — COMSEC material is issued, as appropriate. 21 — Vehicles are started simultaneously. | .4 | and other special preparation requirements are completed prior to |
| The platoon commander conducts a brief detailing AAV support during the combined infantry/AAV operation, and coordinates immediate actions, i.e., ambushes, air strikes, artillery 8 The platoon commander utilizes a terrain model, sketch, or other training aids when briefing the plan and/or conducting 9 The platoon movement order is issued to sections/subordinate elements. (KI) 10 The platoon commander allows the opportunity for AAV personnel questions and comments. 11 The AAV platoon commander ensures all AAV personnel understand the plan and are cognizant of their duties and 12 AAV crew members are briefed on rules of engagement. 13 Crew chiefs ensure all gear is properly secured on both the interior and exterior of vehicles. 14 Route from present location to SP/LOD is reconnoitered to determine the time the movement must be initiated in order to 15 The platoon commander conducts pre-combat inspection. 16 Deficiencies noted during pre-combat inspection are 17 The platoon commander coordinates with supported elements to verify signals/communications and actions to be taken upon 18 Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits. 19 Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen OPSEC vulnerability. 20 COMSEC material is issued, as appropriate. | .5 | |
| the combined infantry/AAV operation, and coordinates immediate actions, i.e., ambushes, air strikes, artillery 8 — The platoon commander utilizes a terrain model, sketch, or other training aids when briefing the plan and/or conducting 9 — The platoon movement order is issued to sections/subordinate elements. (KI) 10 — The platoon commander allows the opportunity for AAV personnel questions and comments. 11 — The AAV platoon commander ensures all AAV personnel understand the plan and are cognizant of their duties and 12 — AAV crew members are briefed on rules of engagement. 13 — Crew chiefs ensure all gear is properly secured on both the interior and exterior of vehicles. 14 — Route from present location to SP/LOD is reconnoitered to determine the time the movement must be initiated in order to 15 — The platoon commander conducts pre-combat inspection. 16 — Deficiencies noted during pre-combat inspection are 17 — The platoon commander coordinates with supported elements to verify signals/communications and actions to be taken upon 18 — Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits. 19 — Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen OPSEC vulnerability. 20 — COMSEC material is issued, as appropriate. 21 — Vehicles are started simultaneously. | .6 | The route/axis of advance to include control measures is |
| training aids when briefing the plan and/or conducting .9 The platoon movement order is issued to sections/subordinate elements. (KI) .10 The platoon commander allows the opportunity for AAV personnel questions and comments. .11 The AAV platoon commander ensures all AAV personnel understand the plan and are cognizant of their duties and .12 AAV crew members are briefed on rules of engagement. .13 Crew chiefs ensure all gear is properly secured on both the interior and exterior of vehicles. .14 Route from present location to SP/LOD is reconnoitered to determine the time the movement must be initiated in order to .15 The platoon commander conducts pre-combat inspection. .16 Deficiencies noted during pre-combat inspection are .17 The platoon commander coordinates with supported elements to verify signals/communications and actions to be taken upon .18 Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits. .19 Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen OPSEC vulnerability. .20 COMSEC material is issued, as appropriate. .21 Vehicles are started simultaneously. | .7 | the combined infantry/AAV operation, and coordinates immediate |
| elements. (KI) .10 The platoon commander allows the opportunity for AAV personnel questions and comments. .11 The AAV platoon commander ensures all AAV personnel understand the plan and are cognizant of their duties and .12 AAV crew members are briefed on rules of engagement. .13 Crew chiefs ensure all gear is properly secured on both the interior and exterior of vehicles. .14 Route from present location to SP/LOD is reconnoitered to determine the time the movement must be initiated in order to .15 The platoon commander conducts pre-combat inspection. .16 Deficiencies noted during pre-combat inspection are .17 The platoon commander coordinates with supported elements to verify signals/communications and actions to be taken upon .18 Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits. .19 Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen OPSEC vulnerability. .20 COMSEC material is issued, as appropriate. .21 Vehicles are started simultaneously. | .8 | |
| questions and comments. .11 The AAV platoon commander ensures all AAV personnel understand the plan and are cognizant of their duties and .12 AAV crew members are briefed on rules of engagement. .13 Crew chiefs ensure all gear is properly secured on both the interior and exterior of vehicles. .14 Route from present location to SP/LOD is reconnoitered to determine the time the movement must be initiated in order to .15 The platoon commander conducts pre-combat inspection. .16 Deficiencies noted during pre-combat inspection are .17 The platoon commander coordinates with supported elements to verify signals/communications and actions to be taken upon .18 Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits. .19 Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen OPSEC vulnerability. .20 COMSEC material is issued, as appropriate. .21 Vehicles are started simultaneously. | .9 | |
| plan and are cognizant of their duties and .12 AAV crew members are briefed on rules of engagement. .13 Crew chiefs ensure all gear is properly secured on both the interior and exterior of vehicles. .14 Route from present location to SP/LOD is reconnoitered to determine the time the movement must be initiated in order to .15 The platoon commander conducts pre-combat inspection. .16 Deficiencies noted during pre-combat inspection are .17 The platoon commander coordinates with supported elements to verify signals/communications and actions to be taken upon .18 Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits. .19 Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen OPSEC vulnerability. .20 COMSEC material is issued, as appropriate. .21 Vehicles are started simultaneously. | .10 | |
| .13 Crew chiefs ensure all gear is properly secured on both the interior and exterior of vehicles. .14 Route from present location to SP/LOD is reconnoitered to determine the time the movement must be initiated in order to .15 The platoon commander conducts pre-combat inspection. .16 Deficiencies noted during pre-combat inspection are .17 The platoon commander coordinates with supported elements to verify signals/communications and actions to be taken upon .18 Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits. .19 Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen OPSEC vulnerability. .20 COMSEC material is issued, as appropriate. .21 Vehicles are started simultaneously. | .11 | |
| interior and exterior of vehicles. .14 Route from present location to SP/LOD is reconnoitered to determine the time the movement must be initiated in order to .15 The platoon commander conducts pre-combat inspection. .16 Deficiencies noted during pre-combat inspection are .17 The platoon commander coordinates with supported elements to verify signals/communications and actions to be taken upon .18 Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits. .19 Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen OPSEC vulnerability. .20 COMSEC material is issued, as appropriate. .21 Vehicles are started simultaneously. | .12 | AAV crew members are briefed on rules of engagement. |
| determine the time the movement must be initiated in order to .15 The platoon commander conducts pre-combat inspection. .16 Deficiencies noted during pre-combat inspection are .17 The platoon commander coordinates with supported elements to verify signals/communications and actions to be taken upon .18 Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits. .19 Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen OPSEC vulnerability. .20 COMSEC material is issued, as appropriate. .21 Vehicles are started simultaneously. | .13 | |
| .16 Deficiencies noted during pre-combat inspection are .17 The platoon commander coordinates with supported elements to verify signals/communications and actions to be taken upon .18 Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits19 Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen OPSEC vulnerability20 COMSEC material is issued, as appropriate21 Vehicles are started simultaneously. | .14 | |
| .17 The platoon commander coordinates with supported elements to verify signals/communications and actions to be taken upon .18 Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits. .19 Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen OPSEC vulnerability. .20 COMSEC material is issued, as appropriate. .21 Vehicles are started simultaneously. | .15 | The platoon commander conducts pre-combat inspection. |
| verify signals/communications and actions to be taken upon .18 Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits. .19 Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen | .16 | Deficiencies noted during pre-combat inspection are |
| .19 Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen OPSEC vulnerability. .20 COMSEC material is issued, as appropriate. .21 Vehicles are started simultaneously. | .17 | |
| OPSEC vulnerability. .20 COMSEC material is issued, as appropriate. .21 Vehicles are started simultaneously. | .18 | Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits. |
| .21 Vehicles are started simultaneously. | .19 | |
| | .20 | COMSEC material is issued, as appropriate. |
| EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None. | .21 | Vehicles are started simultaneously. |
| | EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. |

10-C-16

WARNING ORDER

Ensure that the warning order includes:

- General information on the situation.
- Units to make the move and the anticipated sequence.
- Special logistic support and delivery times required for the operation.
- Anticipated time of movement.
- Time and place the formal order is to be issued and who is to attend.

MOVEMENT ORDER

Ensure the movement order includes:

- Control measures.
- Time for radio check.
- Time to start engines.
- Time SP/LOD is to be crossed.
- Order of march.
- Rate of march, catch-up speed, and interval.
- Actions at halts and upon contact.
- Route clearance time, if applicable.
- Initial techniques of movement/formations.

COORDINATION WITH SUPPORTED UNIT

Ensure prior coordination between supported and supporting organizations includes discussion of at least:

- Route of advance.
- Signals and communications.
- Actions upon contact.
- Limitations of the supported unit.
- Supportability of the mission.

Ensure the operation order, either verbal or written when time permits, contains at least the following:

- Orientation.
- Clearly stated mission and order of priorities.
- Situation.
- Commanders' intent.
- Scheme of maneuver and available fire support.
- Definition of all control measures to be used; checkpoints, phase lines, etc.
- Identification of each specific objective to be seized.
- Any limiting instructions to temper engagement with enemy forces.
- Technique of movement to be used to include designation of leading, training, and overwatch positions to be occupied.
 - Identification of overwatch positions to be occupied.
 - Communication/Signals to be used.
 - Actions at the objective.
 - Focus of effort.
 - Be prepared for follow-on order missions.
 - Disabled vehicle disposition.
- Critical logistics functions; i.e., rearming, refueling, emergency repairs.

LOPALLO.

TASK: 10C.03.03 CONDUCT PASSAGE OF LINES

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The platoon is located in the assembly area with embarked have been given the task to conduct a forward passage of lines.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon commander acknowledges receipt of the order.
- .2 ____ The platoon commander issues warning order to
- .3 ____ The route/axis of advance to include control measures are planned in detail. (KI)
- .4 ____ The platoon commander briefs and coordinates with the supported unit for needs of mechanized passage of lines and issues the platoon the order.

| .5 Conduct movement to passage of lines as briefed. |
|---|
| .6 Co-locate unit CP with stationary unit's CP, as necessary. |
| EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATORS: |
| <u>CONTROL MEASURES</u> |
| Control measures should identify: |
| - Designation of unit to pass. |
| - The enemy situation. |
| - Friendly situation and positions. |
| - Time of passage. |
| - Coordinate passage points and lanes. |
| - Number and type of vehicles to pass. |
| - Patrol routes and OP locations. |
| - Obstacle types and locations of contaminated areas. |
| - Fire support plans. |
| - Vehicle locations and attack positions. |
| - CS and CSS to be provided and location of assets. |
| |
| TASK: 10C.03.04 RELIEF IN PLACE |
| $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV platoon is task organized to support offensive operations. The enemy situation requires the relief in place of a friendly unit. |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 The platoon commander acknowledge receipt of order. |
| .2 The platoon commander issues warning orders to sections/subordinate elements. |
| .3 The platoon commander establishes liaison with supported unit and receives commander intent. |
| .4 The platoon commander conducts a platoon brief detailing actions required to complete relief in place. (KI) |
| .5 Conduct relief in place. |
| EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None. |

MISSION REQUIREMENTS

These should identify:

- Is the relief sequential or simultaneous?
- Assign section positions and sectors of fire to include route to hide and fire positions.
 - Location of obstacles.
 - Fire plan sketches.
 - Apply all defensive techniques.

TASK: 10C.03.05 CROSS THE SP/LOD

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV platoon is supporting offensive operations. The addition to having direct and indirect fire and air capability, has EW capability. The AAV platoon has received the supported unit's order which specified the SP/LOD location and crossing time.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon's lead elements cross the SP/LOP on time.
- .2 ____ Crossing the SP/LOD is accomplished with minimal confusion and minimal radio communications.
- .3 ____ AAVs and supported unit crosses LOD in designated order of
- .4 _____ Platoon elements move out using designated movement techniques/formations. (KI)
- 5 ____ Unit crosses release point on time.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

TECHNIQUES OF MOVEMENT

The various techniques of movement are described in general in task 10C.3.6and specifically as follows:

- Traveling (See task 10C.3.7)
- Traveling Overwatch (See task 10C.3.9)

If a particular movement technique is not specified in the movement order, the AAV platoon commander recommends a technique most appropriate to the enemy situation and terrain.

TASK: 10C.03.06 EMPLOY MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES

<u>CONDITION(S)</u>: The AAV platoon is task organized to support offensive operations. The enemy situation and operating area requires the employment of varying movement techniques. The enemy, in addition to direct and indirect fire and air capabilities, has EW capability. The supported unit's OpOrd, based on input from the AAV platoon commander, specifies movement techniques and signals to alter the movement techniques and formations, as well as procedure to be used upon contact with the enemy.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The AAV platoon maintains security at all times. |
|-----|--|
| .2 | The platoon commander maintains positive control over lead, flank and rear security elements. |
| .3 | The platoon commander recommends changes to the formation as the enemy situation changes. |
| .4 | The platoon commander recommends movement techniques that make th best use of the terrain. |
| .5 | Moving unit communicates internally using visual signals, if |
| .6 | Control measures are reported. |
| .7 | The platoon responds immediately to the supported unit commander, if required. |
| .8 | Crew members demonstrate knowledge of procedures to be used upon contact with enemy forces. |
| .9 | AAVs employ smoke and suppressive fires for self-protection upon initial contact or as directed by the supported unit. |
| .10 | AAVs use appropriate techniques of movement when crossing danger area. (KI) |
| .11 | Formations are constantly adjusted to compensate for the tactical |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluators observe elements/entire unit during each move and apply the 90 percent rule.

situation and the terrain.

KEY INDICATORS:

CROSSING DANGER AREAS

Upon reaching a danger area (e.g., wooded area, defile, bridge, urban area, obstacles to be cleared, etc.), the AAV unit establishes local vehicle security, establishes overwatch positions, and dismounts infantry to secure the danger area as necessary. AAV unit moves through danger area by echelon or as situation dictates. Coordination between the infantry and the supporting AAV unit is critical to the successful completion of the task.

TASK: 10C.03.07 MOVE BY TRAVELING

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV platoon moves by traveling when enemy contact is speed is essential.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| 1 | ΔΔΜς | move | in | the | ordered | formation. |
|------------|------|--------|-----|------|---------|-------------|
| . _ | AAVS | IIIOVE | T11 | CIIC | oraerea | TOTHIACTOH. |

- 2 ____ Sections/Subordinate units move by traveling.
- .3 ____ All elements move at the maximum safe speed.
- .4 _____ Platoon formations use covered and concealed routes to maximum extent possible.
- .5 ____ The platoon commander reports crossing control measures as

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Ninety percent rule applies.

<u>KEY INDICATORS</u>: None.

TASK: 10C.03.08 MOVE BY TRAVELING OVERWATCH

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV platoon moves by traveling overwatch when contact is possible.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- AAV platoon's lead element continues to move, acting as the base unit, maintaining the rate and direction of march. (KI)
- .2 ____ Trailing elements move at variable speeds frequently pausing to overwatch movement of the lead element.
- .3 ____ Trailing elements key their movement to terrain and overwatch positions so they can support the lead element if that element
- .4 ____ The platoon commander reports the crossing of control measures to the supported commander as specified.

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: Evaluator advises the platoon commander that he is entering the rear of the battle area and enemy contact is possible.

KEY INDICATORS:

LEAD ELEMENT MOVEMENT

The lead element's rate of movement must be governed by the ability of the trailing elements to arrive at and establish appropriate overwatch positions.

TASK: 10C.03.09 MOVE BY BOUNDING OVERWATCH

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AAV platoon moves by bounding overwatch when contact is expected/imminent.

| expected/imminent. |
|--|
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 Bounding overwatch techniques are utilized. |
| .2 Overwatch sections/elements occupy overwatch position(s) and searches adjacent terrain. (KI) |
| .3 Overwatch positions offer good fields of fire to cover bounding AAV section/element. |
| .4 Bounding AAV section/element moves into terrain being searched by overwatch section(s) and takes up good overwatch positions. |
| .5 Bounding section occupies subsequent overwatch positions, searches adjacent terrain, and verifies that it is secure. |
| .6 Bounding section reports by either signal or radio that it is prepared to overwatch. |
| <u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u> : Evaluator may deploy aggressors against lead squads/elements; 90 percent rule applies. |
| KEY INDICATORS: |
| ACETON OF OVERWARDI GOVERNO DE EMENTES |
| ACTION OF OVERWATCH SQUADS/ELEMENTS |
| Squads/elements must: |
| - Vehicles occupy suitable positions and prepare to fire. |
| - Positions permit observation and fires upon the moving unit's axis and terrain which dominates that axis. |
| - Overwatch squad(s)/element engages detected enemy with all available direct fire weapons (within effective range). |
| TASK: 10C.03.10 CONDUCT TACTICAL HALT |
| CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is required to halt while conducting a |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 With infantry dismounted for area security, AAVs halt in a formation appropriate to the terrain, time available, and |
| .2 The platoon commander establishes unit security immediately to include air watches. |
| .3 At halt, vehicle checks are conducted per unit SOP based on |

ENCLOSURE (1)

.4 ____ Vehicles are prepared to move out in prescribed order of march.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 10C.03.11 CONDUCT NIGHT MOVEMENT

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon has been ordered to provide support to an A cross country movement at night is required to link up with the adjacent unit. The adjacent unit is located at a minimum distance of 5 miles. Due to the enemy situation and tempo of operations, no infantry support is available for vehicle security. The enemy situation requires that a bounding technique of movement be utilized. The enemy has direct and indirect fire, air, and EW capabilities. The AAV platoon commander has been ordered to limit radio traffic to the absolute minimum and use covered communications.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The platoon commander plans for the use of night vision |
|--------------|---|
| .2 | The platoon commander coordinates with the adjacent unit to specify link up point, route, fire support plan, call signs and frequencies, and recognition signals. |
| .3 | The route selection minimizes AAV exposure to the enemy. |
| .4 | The platoon commander determines the ambient light level. |
| .5 | The platoon commander maintains effective command and control over the formation during night operations. |
| .6 | The AAVs reach link-up point within prescribed time. |
| .7 | The platoon commander plans primary and alternate means of communications to ensure effective command and control. |
| .8 | The platoon has plans for evasive maneuvers that are easily coordinated and controlled. |
| .9 | The platoon employs navigation aids, such as the GAIL lighting system, chemical lights, GPS, etc., to aid in movement as |
| .10 | The platoon commander plans for and employs a quartering |
| EVALUATOR IN | ISTRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATO | DRS: None. |

TASK: 10C.03.12 CONDUCT AAV GUNNERY OPERATIONS

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV platoon is providing .50 cal and 40mm fire support movement from hasty positions. Enemy forces are located from ranges of 200 meters to 1500 meters. The targets vary from enemy troops in trench lines and bunkers to armored vehicles.

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: | \mathbf{v} . | NT • | ישדא |
|------------|-------|----------------|------|------|
| DIAMPANDO. | EVAL. | 1/ | TA 1 | TAL |

| .1 | Section leaders demonstrate the ability to identify targets and direct effective fire on target using the appropriate weapons and fire commands. (KI) |
|----|---|
| .2 | Crewmen demonstrate the ability to hit the targets they are |
| .3 | AAV guncrews perform reconnaissance by fire, suppressive fire, engagement of point and area targets, and multiple |
| .4 | 50 cal. barrels are changed approximately every 1000 rounds if breaks in action make it feasible. |
| .5 | While firing at a short halt, crewmen demonstrate the ability to hit an area target. |
| .6 | Crewmen demonstrate proper actions during weapon failures. |
| .7 | AAV unit reports SITREP to higher headquarters. |

 ${\tt EVALUATOR\ INSTRUCTIONS}$: The evaluator should be in a position where he can monitor fire commands as well as view the targets. Binoculars are required. All crews should be evaluated with the 90 percent rule applying.

KEY INDICATORS:

ELEMENTS OF A FIRE COMMAND

Fire commands must contain:

- Alert.
- Direction.
- Range.
- Assignment.
- Control.

TECHNIQUES OF FIRE

Different techniques are:

- a. RECONNAISSANCE BY FIRE: Fire single burst with the goal of drawing return fire from the enemy. Vehicle should be in a defiled position.
- b. SUPPRESSIVE FIRE: Direct fire designed to inflict damage and casualties at known or suspected enemy positions. Fired in bursts of 10-15 rounds every 10 seconds.
- c. POINT TARGET: A target covering a small area that can be hit by one of two burst of 10-15 rounds. Should be engaged from short halts.
- d. AREA TARGET: Normally covers a wide area. Use of the "z" pattern is most effective.

e. MULTIPLE TARGETS: Suppressive fire is utilized. Multiple targets are engaged by different sections within the platoon(s). The targets providing the most immediate threat are engaged first.

TASK: 10C.03.13 CONDUCT AN ASSAULT

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: An AAV platoon with embarked troops has encountered enemy forces and must conduct an assault on their position.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 $_$ Reconnoiter the enemy position to find gaps or flanks that can be exploited.
- .2 ____ The platoon commander coordinates the action of the platoon through previous rehearsed battle drills and control measures.
- .3 ____ The platoon executes a mounted/dismounted assault on the enemy position. (KI)
- .4 ____ Continue to coordinate and send SITREPs to higher
- .5 ____ Conduct consolidation. (KI)
- .6 ____ Conduct reorganization. (KI)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

THE ASSAULT

The assault is identified by:

- Seizure of the enemy occupied position mounted/dismounted.
- Assault by mass/fire and maneuver.
- Exploit all enemy defensive weaknesses.
- Platoon uses terrain features to mask movement.
- AAVs dismount infantry and support by fire.

CONSOLIDATION

Upon consolidation, platoon must:

- Eliminate enemy positions.
- Defend and prepare hasty position.
- Establish security.

- Establish fields of fire.
- Conduct reconnaissance.
- Prepare to continue the attack.

REORGANIZATION

During reorganization, platoon commander must ensure to:

- Replace key individuals.
- Evacuate wounded, KIAs, EPWs, and damaged equipment.
- Redistribute supplies, ammunition, and equipment within the unit, as necessary.
- Replenish all supplies, fuel and ammunition.
- Repair all vehicles.

TASK: 10C.03.14 ESTABLISH DEFENSIVE POSITIONS

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV platoon has been ordered to conduct defensive support of an infantry unit.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The platoon commander acknowledges receipt of the supported unit's $\ensuremath{\text{OpOrd}/\text{FRAG}}$ Order. |
|-----|---|
| .2 | The platoon commander conducts a reconnaissance of the assigned defensive positions. |
| .3 | AAVs move to the initial defensive positions utilizing movement techniques appropriate to the threat, visibility, and |
| .4 | The platoon commander coordinates with the supported unit and ensures vehicle security is provided. |
| .5 | The platoon commander coordinates sectors of fire and the general location of vehicle fighting positions. |
| .6 | AAV crews occupy vehicle fighting positions. |
| .7 | AAV crews prepare range cards. |
| .8 | Section leaders prepare fire plan sketches. |
| .9 | The platoon commander determines the need for camouflage |
| .10 | Crews make efforts to cover "track prints" around positions. |

ENCLOSURE (1)

.11 ____ AAV platoon lays communications wire, if time permits.

| .12 | The platoon commander coordinates with the supported unit to select alternate and supplementary positions, covered and concealed routes between fighting positions, and rehearses |
|-----|---|
| .13 | Crewmen utilize night vision devices. |
| .14 | The platoon is prepared to move to counterattack position, |
| .15 | The platoon rehearses counter-attack if situation permits. |
| .16 | The platoon rehearses movement back to subsequent battle position if in a mobile defense. |
| .17 | The platoon conducts reconnaissance of subsequent battle position, if applicable. |
| .18 | Crew chiefs constantly improving vehicle position. |

AAV PLATOON COMMANDER RESPONSIBILITIES

The AAV platoon commander designates sectors of fires to maximize the effectiveness of the unit's weapons. These sectors are submitted to higher headquarters for inclusion in the overall defensive overlay. He places special emphasis on the following:

- Proper utilization of terrain.
- Covered and concealed positions.
- Camouflage techniques.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

- Control of key terrain.
- Defense in depth with mutually supporting fires.
- Good observation and fields of fire.
- Designated Target Reference Points (TRPs), engagement areas, boundaries, and Armor Kill Zones (AKZs).
 - Cover for likely fields of approach.
 - Long range and flanking fires.
 - Supplemental positions.
 - Coordination with adjacent units.
 - Plans for close and midrange fires.
 - Plan for withdrawal.
 - Designated priority of work.

- Assignment of target priorities.
- Construct/Coordinate emplacement of obstacles.

TASK: 10C.03.15 EMPLOYMENT OF AAV WEAPONS IN THE DEFENSE

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AAV platoon is providing fire support from defensive night. Enemy forces are located from ranges of 200 meters. The targets vary from troops in trench lines and bunkers to armored vehicle.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| _ | | | | | _ | | | | |
|----|------|-------|--------|-----------|----|-----|----------|---------|----------|
| .1 | Crew | chiet | checks | boresight | Οİ | the | vehicles | weapons | station. |

- .2 ____ Crew chiefs make appropriate range cards. (KI)
- .3 ____ Section leaders make fire plan sketches.
- .4 ____ Based on the range card, crewman demonstrate the ability to employ 50 cal against suitable targets.
- .5 ____ Based on range cards, AAV crewman demonstrate the ability to employ 40mm grenade launcher against suitable targets.
- .6 ____ AAV organic firepower assets are employed per control measures in effect at the time of engagement. (KI)

KEY INDICATORS:

CONTROL MEASURES

Published by the senior headquarters or supported unit and should include:

- Target reference point.
- Engagement areas/armor kill zones.
- Sectors and limits of fire.
- Unit boundaries.
- Target priorities for each weapon system.

RANGE CARDS

The four essential parts of a range card are:

- Target identification.
- Azimuth.

- Range.
- Evaluation.

TASK: 10C.03.16 EMPLOYMENT OF SMOKE SCREEN

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV platoon is supporting embarked infantry personnel. Enemy forces have engaged the element. The employment of smoke has been briefed prior to the commencement of operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ AAV crews correctly load and fire the M257 Smoke Grenade
- .2 ____ Lays down a smoke screen.
- .3 ____ AAV crews demonstrate immediate action on the M257 Grenade

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

IMMEDIATE ACTION

If the M-257 Smoke Grenade Launcher does not fire on the first attempt, immediate action procedures are as follows:

- Shut down electrical power in the turret.
- Wait 10 seconds, rearm system and attempt to fire.
- Shut down electrical power in the turret.
- Wait 10 seconds, gunner checks for properly seated grenade. Secure turret hatch, turn electrical power on, rearm and attempt to fire.
 - Shut down electrical power in the turret.
- Wait 10 seconds, remove grenade and stow the round to turn in later to EOD personnel for disposal.

MPS 10C.04 - SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

TASK: 10C.04.01 CONDUCT RECOVERY OPERATIONS

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV platoon is in direct support. An AAV has become a casualty and must be recovered.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Immediate actions are taken to extract personnel and/or extinguish fires, consistent with the tactical situation. |
|----|--|
| .2 | Medvac SITREPS are to be sent to higher headquarters. |
| .3 | The crew of disabled AAV, with platoon maintenance chief, conducts battle damage assessment and makes repairs, if |
| .4 | The platoon sergeant requests a recovery vehicle through the supported or parent unit. |
| .5 | The platoon sergeant coordinates recovery effort with the supported unit including the location of, and route to, the |
| .6 | Disabled vehicle(s) and/or equipment is recovered/evacuated. |
| .7 | NBC contaminated equipment is recovered/evacuated. (KI) |
| .8 | The platoon commander requests replacement vehicle, if |
| .9 | Crewmen use approved methods of AAV destruction to prevent the enemy use of vehicle if it cannot be salvaged or recovered. |

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with the TEC, inserts sufficient vehicle casualty play into the tactical scenario to evaluate this task including simulated destruction of AAV.

KEY INDICATORS:

RECOVERY COORDINATION

The recovery effort coordination:

- Coordination with the supported unit to ensure familiarization with the situation and tactical control measures in effect.
 - Identifying location and a route to vehicle/equipment.
 - Locating vehicle/equipment without excessive searching.
 - Ensuring security augmentation, if tactically required.

RECOVERY, EVACUATION OR CONTAMINATED EQUIPMENT

 $\ensuremath{\mathsf{NBC}}$ contaminated recovery operations have the following additional requirements:

- Crews adopt MOPP 4 and button up recovery vehicle before entering contaminated $\,$

area.

- Select route that minimizes exposure.
- Enforce all safety regulations.
- Rig for evacuation.
- Recover vehicle/equipment and evacuate it to the EDS.
- Assist EDS personnel in decontaminating the recovery vehicle.
- Evacuate to the appropriate maintenance/support activity.

TASK: 10C.04.02 CONDUCT SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV platoon is tasked to support tactical operations and/or on land. Initial planning has been completed, as well as liaison with the supported and/or parent unit. Final preparations for supportability have been completed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | AAV platoon commander and/or AAV parent unit maintenance provide input into the logistics plan. (KI) |
|----|--|
| .2 | AAV crews conduct timely crew maintenance (second echelon maintenance and below) prior to deployment. |
| .3 | Supply and maintenance responsibilities are clearly understood by the platoon commander and the supported unit commander. |
| .4 | AAV crews are trained in all the operation, preventative maintenance, and lubrication tasks related to their vehicle. |
| .5 | Trained maintenance personnel format the parent company are attached to the platoon and are located well forward and readily available to the AAV unit. (KI) |
| .6 | The platoon carries an operational block of repair parts while deployed, to include PEB, extended maintenance materials, and disposable items for all organic equipment. |

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with TEC, inserts sufficient logistic and maintenance requirements into the tactical scenario to provide for evaluation of this task.

a routine basis, and a continuing service program

.7 ____ Preventative maintenance "spot check" inspections are conducted on

ORGANIZATIONAL MAINTENANCE

Ensure organizational maintenance is organized to accomplish the following:

- Make repairs as far forward as possible.
- Identify and record precise discrepancies of the vehicles and equipment to include specific parts and actions required.
- $\mbox{-}$ Provide necessary personnel, parts, tools, and equipment to affect repairs.
 - Repair and return vehicles and equipment to the unit in a timely manner.

MPS 10C.05 - CONTINUING ACTIONS BY MARINES

TASK: 10C.05.01 IMPLEMENTING DISCIPLINE

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AAV platoon is tasked to support the tactical combat element. Operations can be waterborne, ashore, or both. The platoon is equipped for both day and night operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Platoon personnel safeguard and clean their weapons, both individual and crew served, daily. |
|----|--|
| .2 | Platoon vehicles, are given regular operator maintenance by the Marine(s) assigned to operate them. |
| .3 | Log books are filled out including operating entries and |
| .4 | The platoon employs it's firepower in an orderly and organized fashion when engaged. Random wastage of ammunition is not |
| .5 | Supplies are safeguarded from the enemy and from the weather, and are not scattered about. |
| .6 | Marine operating radios do not expose themselves to Radio Detection Finding (RDF) by unnecessary, wordy, or repetitious message traffic. Standard passwords are used and communication checks are limited. All personnel using radios adhere to required standards of performance regardless of grade. |
| .7 | Unit cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor noise discipline, particularly during halts. |
| .8 | Unit cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor light |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: If a unit is located by RDF or observation as a result of noise, light, and/or communications procedures, the standard cannot be considered as having been met. Evaluators must determine if the unit is violating light, noise, and communication procedures discipline when no aggressors or EW support is available from the TEC. This task will be evaluated over the entire exercise and evaluators will note efforts of unit leaders to maintain and correct discipline. Improvement by the unit throughout the exercise, such as standards become consistently met, may result in a "yes" marking.

KEY INDICATORS:

CONDUCT PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM)

The AAV platoon is supporting tactical operations. The operation is of limited duration; however, the AAV platoon is supporting both the ship to objective movement and land operations.

TASK: 10C.05.02 CONDUCT PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM)

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV platoon is supporting tactical operations. The limited duration; however, the AAV platoon is supporting both the ship to objective movement and land operations.

| movement and land operations. |
|--|
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 The platoon commander includes preventative maintenance time during operational planning. |
| .2 Vehicle crew chiefs assign crewman areas of responsibility for PM and supervise their efforts. |
| .3 Crewmen display a sense of urgency when conducting PMs. |
| .4 Preoperation, during operation, and post operation checks are |
| .5 Proper startup procedures are followed. |
| .6 During scheduled/nonscheduled halts, PM checks are performed. |
| .7 Proper cool down procedures are followed before shutting down. |
| .8 Additional equipment including weapons, receive continuous maintenance by crewmen. |
| .9 Safety rules and regulations are followed per unit SOP. |
| .10 Crewmen conduct PM on communications equipment. |
| .11 Maintenance personnel aggressively coordinate with crew chiefs to identify corrective maintenance needs. |
| EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: This task is applicable at all times. Evaluators must be familiar with proper first echelon maintenance and lubrication procedures. |
| KEY INDICATORS: |
| HALT CHECKS |
| Halt checks are scheduled to occur during all long movements. Anytime the platoon makes unscheduled halts, PM checks are made. During short halts, a walk around inspection is made to check the hull and suspension components. Longer halts include engine compartment/fluid level checks. |

TASK: 10C.05.03 DEMONSTRATE DISPERSION

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AAV platoon is tasked to provide direct support to a ground element. The tactical situation requires both offensive and defense actions to occur.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ AAVs/Personnel maintain dispersion during movement, and in particular, do not bunch together at the conclusion of an

| .2 AAVs maintain assigned positions and intervals during |
|---|
| .3 All platoon vehicles maintain dispersion during halts, in assembly areas, and when deployed in the defense. |
| <u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u> : None. |
| <u>KEY INDICATORS</u> : None. |
| TASK: 10C.05.04 EMPLOY COVER AND CONCEALMENT |
| <u>CONDITION(S)</u> : The AAV platoon is tasked to provide direct support of a The tactical situation requires both offensive and defensive actions to occur. |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 Individual Marines demonstrate attention to detail when camouflaging platoon vehicles and equipment to include protection against overhead observation. |
| .2 When halted for extended periods, vehicles are camouflaged with reflective surfaces dulled. |
| .3 Equipment and tentage are provided with appropriate netting or are concealed with natural material. |
| .4 The platoon commander stresses placement of men and material in areas that provide cover and concealment from casual detection by enemy air and ground assets. Use of shadow areas |
| .5 Covered positions allow for adequate observation and fields of |
| .6 Crew members correctly generate vehicle smoke for screening if required by the tactical commander. |
| .7 The platoon selects and prepares a position that offers the best camouflage and cover. |
| <pre>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator observes individual Marines and the platoon. This task is applicable throughout the operation.</pre> |
| KEY INDICATORS: |
| COVERED POSITION |
| Ensure that covered firing positions satisfy the following requirements: |
| - Position allows the best possible observation and fields of fire consistent with the terrain and tactical situation. |
| - Weapons mounted on the vehicle can cover the assigned targets/engagement areas. |
| - Vehicle's hull is protected from direct fire from the front. |

TASK: 10C.05.05 REACT TO DIRECT FIRES

KEY INDICATORS: None.

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AAV platoon is moving and is engaged by enemy vehicles/armored personnel carriers, antitank gun, ATGM, or small arms.

| STANDARDS: E | VAL: Y; N; NE |
|--------------------------|--|
| .1 | AAV platoon returns fire immediately, if in range. |
| | The platoon employs smoke to obscure the enemy's observation and to screen the movement of AAVs, if tactically appropriate. |
| | The AAVs initiate evasive action and use available terrain features/dispersion. |
| | The platoon employs all available direct fire weapons to suppress the enemy. |
| | The platoon commander requests immediate fire support from mortars, artillery, NGF, and/or aircraft if available. |
| .6 | Spot reports are submitted to the supported unit headquarters. |
| .7 | The platoon commander continues to develop the situation. |
| EVALUATOR INST | TRUCTIONS: A simulated or actual request for fire, artillery or quired. |
| KEY INDICATOR | S: None. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10C.05 | .06 REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE |
| <pre>CONDITION(S):</pre> | AAV platoon is moving and comes under indirect fire from source. |
| STANDARDS: E | VAL: Y; N; NE |
| | AAVs move through the impact area, continue the mission, and button up as appropriate. |
| | The platoon employs smoke to obscure enemy's observation and to screen the movement of AAVs, if tactically appropriate. |
| | The platoon commander ensures dispersion and uses evasive maneuvers to maximize use of available covering terrain. |
| | When under "automatic masking" directives, crews don protective mask, initiate NBC monitor/survey, and submit NBC-1 |
| | The platoon submits spot report and SHELLREP to the supported unit as appropriate. |
| EVALUATOR INS | TRUCTIONS: None. |

TASK: 10C.05.07 ESTABLISH TACTICAL RADIO COMMUNICATION

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is in direct support of tactical operations order r

| requires the | AAV platoon to operate covered circuits. |
|--------------|---|
| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | Demonstrates the ability to operate COMSEC equipment. |
| .2 | Demonstrates the ability to use encryption devices. |
| .3 | Demonstrates the ability to use authentication tables. |
| .4 | AAV crews understand and demonstrate "beadwindow" procedures. |
| .5 | Crew chiefs and section leaders are able to explain the capabilities of the vehicle communications system in the |
| .6 | Demonstrates radio discipline by keeping conversations short and radio checks to a minimum. |
| .7 | Reports inoperable communications equipment in a timely |
| .8 | Demonstrates the ability to pass information by alternate |
| .9 | Platoon personnel demonstrate the ability to perform a late net entry, if required. |
| .10 | Platoon personnel demonstrate the ability to perform a Hot |
| .11 | Platoon personnel demonstrate the ability to transfer SOI, COMSEC, FH data/Sync time from ANCD to ANCD (supported units |
| .12 | Platoon personnel demonstrate the ability to load time and date from PLGR to ANCD and PLGR to RT. |
| EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATO | RS: None. |

TASK: 10C.05.08 RESPOND TO ENEMY ELECTRONIC WARFARE (EW)

 $\underline{\mathtt{CONDITION}(S)}$: Enemy forces have the capability to conduct ESM and ECM radio spectrum. Initiative deception and frequency jamming are being used. Numerous items of friendly communications equipment are known to be in the hands of the enemy, and they are familiar with our communication techniques and procedures. Enemy antennas are located well forward.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ All radio nets specified as covered circuits in the CEOI plan operate in the covered mode.

| .2 | CEOI is followed; daily changing frequencies and call signs |
|----------------------|---|
| .3 | Operators adhere to emission control (EMCON) procedures. |
| .4 | Vehicle commanders choose sites that provide for terrain masking to minimize enemy probability of communication |
| .5 | Authentication is required by Marines guarding uncovered radio |
| .6 | Marines operating radios do not reveal effectiveness of enemy jamming efforts and continue to attempt to communicate. |
| .7 | Proven or suspected enemy electronic activity is reported to the supported unit by a "MIJI" report via wire, messenger, or other secure means in a timely manner. |
| .8 | Relays communications by alternate means when radio are |
| .9 | Radio operators do not compromise unit locations, strength, or commit other "BEADWINDOW" security violations. |
| .10 | Expedient radio antennas are employed, when feasible. |
| .11 | Low priority and routine messages are sent by other than |
| .12 | Transmitting power is set at the minimum required to |
| .13 | Brevity codes promulgated by the appropriate communications SOP are employed. |
| EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATOR | RS: None. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10C.0! | 5.09 RESPOND TO ENEMY AIR THREAT |
| CONDITION(S) | : The enemy has fixed wing and attack helicopter capability. |
| STANDARDS: 1 | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | The AAV unit has established procedures for both active and passive air defense. |
| .2 | Air guards are designated. (KI) |
| .3 | The platoon has an alarm system to warn of air attack. |
| .4 | Planned procedures are used to alert all personnel on board the AAVs to air attack. |
| .5 | Crewmen are aware of, and react to, the meaning of the alarm. |
| .6 | The platoon's maneuver elements continue to maneuver, relying on overwatch elements and air defense elements to engage |
| | |

| .7 | If given advance warning of approaching hostile aircraft, the platoon takes appropriate passive measures. (KI) |
|-----|---|
| .8 | If the platoon is taken by surprise by hostile aircraft, the AAVs take appropriate active defensive actions. (KI) |
| .9 | The platoon commander maintains fire control and causes the delivery of a heavy volume of fire at the attacking aircraft. |
| .10 | The platoon reports attack by enemy air to the supported unit by |

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with the TEC, ensures that enemy air activity corresponds to contemporary threat air tactics, and that threat aircraft type is announced to the evaluated unit.

KEY INDICATORS:

flash message.

AIR GUARDS

Air guards are specifically assigned within each subordinate element designated to watch for the approach of hostile aircraft. Moving units increase the number of air guards, and specify sectors to cover 360 degrees of observation. They are able to:

- State the nature of the threat; i.e., fixed-wing jet, fixed-wing prop, or rotary wing.
 - Use the signal established as the alarm for attack.
 - Identify friendly aircraft that are in support of the unit.

PASSIVE DEFENSE AGAINST ENEMY AIRCRAFT

If adequate advance warning alerts the AAV platoon to incoming enemy aircraft, whether it be fixed-wing or helicopter, the following passive measures should be taken:

- Slow movement down to reduce dust signature if on the move.
- Use covered and concealed firing positions; take up positions beside hill masses that will mask the vehicles and limit the approach angle of the aircraft.
 - Assign sectors of fire.

ACTIVE DEFENSE AGAINST ENEMY AIRCRAFT

Once the AAV platoon has taken up a passive antiair posture, there is a possibility that enemy aircraft, especially fixed-wing, will not see the AAV unit and will bypass it. If so, the AAV platoon should stay in place until the aircraft are safely out of range then continue on with the mission. If the enemy air detects the AAV platoon, or the unit is ordered to engage the aircraft, the following steps are taken:

- $\mbox{-}$ On order, AAVs and embarked Marines engage the aircraft with onboard weapons systems.
- Maneuver to provide the most difficult target to the aircraft; i.e., if in a column turn at a right angle to approaching aircraft.

- Employ smoke to screen the force and move to preplanned secondary positions.

TASK: 10C.05.10 PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The AAV platoon is moving in a rear area without embarked and uncovers enemy soldiers attempting to impulse a mine. The enemy is captured with both the explosive device and documents.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The platoon processes EPWs per the Marine Corps Battle Skills Test (MBST) Manual. (KI) |
|----|---|
| .2 | Perishable information obtained from EPWs is reported to higher headquarters by most expeditious means. |
| .3 | Marines handling wounded or sick EPWs ensure they receive proper medical care. |
| .4 | EPWs are allowed to retain personal protective equipment (e.g., helmet, gas masks, etc.). |
| .5 | EPWs and all recovered equipment/documents are transferred to higher headquarters as soon as possible. |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

EPW PROCESSING:

EPWs are processed in accordance with the following:

- Individual Marines handling EPWs segregate them by type: Officers, NCOs, unranked, civilian combatants, sex, etc.
- $\mbox{-}\mbox{EPWs}$ are searched immediately after capture, material found is tagged per the EPW from whom it was taken.
- EPWs are required to remain silent and are not permitted to converse among themselves.
 - EPWs are processed with speed to obtain maximum intelligence benefit.
- Marines handling EPWs ensure that they are safeguarded from abuse and from hazards of enemy fire.

TASK: 10C.05.11 PROCESS CASUALTY EVACUATIONS

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The AAV platoon is in support and has been tasked with to provide for a waterborne means of evacuating casualties. Organic corpsmen are with the platoon.

| STANDARDS: EVA | AL: Y; N; NE |
|------------------------|---|
| .1 AA | AV platoon briefs its MEDEVAC capabilities to the supported |
| | ne AAV platoon understands the supported unit's MEDEVAC rocedures, priorities, and required reports. |
| .3 AA | AV litter kits are properly installed and serviceable. |
| de | arines dealing with casualties prior to arrival of corpsmen emonstrate emergency first aid knowledge in the treatment for nock, fractures, penetrating wounds, and sucking chest |
| .5 Li | ghtly wounded Marines apply self aid. |
| | arines dealing with casualties are familiar with evacuation cocedures, locations of medical facilities, and safe routes |
| ir | arines who must be evacuated are transported to the treatment site a tactically sound and expeditious manner with adequate on board edical assistance. |
| .8 Ca | asualty reporting begins immediately through the chain of |
| .9 Wo | ounded Marines' equipment is handled per Op order. |
| KEY INDICATORS: | CHAIN OF EVACUATION |
| of aid stations | ould be aware of all possible means to MEDVAC personnel. Location s should be noted in operations orders. Each AAV platoon should a assigned to assist in medical treatment and evacuation. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10C.05.1 | 2 IMPLEMENTING AAV OPERATIONAL SAFETY PRECAUTIONS |
| CONDITION(S): on land. | The AAV platoon is in support of day/night tactical the sea and |
| STANDARDS: EVA | AL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 A | safety brief is conducted prior to water operations. |
| | ll embarked personnel must wear helmets and carry weapons with uzzles down. (KI) |
| | ll personnel wear inflatable preservers with serviceable CO2 artridges during water operations. |
| .4 Sa | afety belts are not worn while the vehicle is waterborne. |
| | |

| .5 | Embarked personnel wear normal combat equipment over a life preserver and loose enough to jettison without delay. |
|-----|---|
| .6 | Embarked personnel are provided an individual vision light during night operations that is attached to the life |
| .7 | Personnel are restricted from riding on top of a moving AAV. |
| .8 | Personnel do not ride in a moving AAV with more than their heads and shoulders extending above the hatch. |
| .9 | No smoking is allowed. |
| .10 | AAVs maintain a distance of at least 50 meters during periods of unrestricted visibility, or less during periods of restricted visibility while waterborne. |
| .11 | An AAV crewmember positions himself at the aft personnel door to ensure the door is secure during all waterborne |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

<u>HELMETS</u>

All personnel manning AAVs wear helmets. Crewmembers normally wear communication helmets while passengers wear the Kevlar issue helmet and carry weapons with muzzles down.

LIFE PRESERVERS

All personnel wear the inflatable type life preserver at all times during water operations. AAV unit provides life preservers for crewmen and embarked personnel. Inflatable type life jackets will be worn around the neck and under equipment while vehicles are waterborn, and not contained in the carrying case at the belt.

MPS 10C.06 - NBC OPERATIONS

TASK: 10C.06.01 PREPARE FOR NBC OPERATIONS

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: Threat forces have employed NBC munitions in the area destroying/disrupting operations and facilities. Due to the threat, passive and active defense measures must be used for survival of the AAV platoon.

| active defense measures must be used for survival of the AAV platoon. | | |
|--|--|--|
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE | | |
| .1 AAV platoon possesses procedures for enemy NBC strikes and the reports required. | | |
| .2 All individual NBC defense equipment authorized by the table of equipment (T/E) is issued to each individual. | | |
| .3 All unit NBC defense equipment authorized by T/E is operationally ready and distributed to trained operators. | | |
| .4 NBC equipment shortages are identified and replacement actions | | |
| .5 All decontamination devices are ready for training. | | |
| .6 MOPP level is established by the supported unit and AAV personnel are at or above required MOPP level. | | |
| .7 Marines properly identify NATO or threat NBC contamination | | |
| .8 All elements of the platoon maximize the utilization of terrain features for cover, concealment, and topographic | | |
| EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Provide the platoon information to expect an imminent NBC attack by the enemy and integrate NBC scenarios with normal missions. Evaluator(s) should be school trained in the area of NBC defense (MOS 57XX) or be thoroughly trained in this area as part of evaluators' school. | | |
| KEY INDICATORS: None. | | |
| TASK: 10C.06.02 PREPARE FOR NUCLEAR ATTACK | | |
| $\overline{	ext{CONDITION(S)}}$: AAV platoon commander is informed that nuclear weapons the theater of operations. | | |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE | | |
| .1 Backup command, control, and communication procedures are used | | |
| .2 Subordinate/displaced elements are alerted, if applicable. | | |
| .3 The platoon continues the mission while implementing actions to minimize casualties and damage. | | |
| .4 The platoon implements protective measures, as directed by higher | | |

ENCLOSURE (1)

command element, consistent with the mission.

| .5 | Personnel minimize exposure by rolling down sleeve, buttoning collars, and wearing additional clothing equal to a two |
|--------------|--|
| .6 | Personnel take cover in fighting holes, armored vehicles, existing shelters (basements, culverts, caves, tunnels, etc.), or lie prone on the ground, as dictated by the time of the |
| .7 | External electronic equipment is protected from ElectroMagnetic Pulse (EMP) and Transient Radiation Effects on |
| .8 | Periodic monitoring is initiated, using the appropriate radiac detector devices. |
| .9 | Vehicles are placed behind masking terrain. |
| .10 | All loose items, flammable/explosive items, food and water, which are not stored in AAVs, are secured and protected from |
| .11 | Platoon personnel use standard first aid procedures to provide self/buddy aid for nuclear blast and thermal effects. |
| EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATO | RS: None. |
| TASK: 10C.0 | 6.03 RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK |
| | : Nuclear burst has occurred or is imminent. |
| | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| | |
| .1 | Upon recognizing the attack, all personnel take immediate action to shield themselves from blast/heat of detonation. |
| .2 | Chain of command and communications are maintained or reestablished. AAVs resume mission, if possible. |
| .3 | NBC-1 initial and follow-up reports, as required, are rapidly submitted to the supported command element by personnel designated or responsible for collecting the information. Reliable and complete reports are rapidly forwarded, by secure |
| .4 | Casualties are given first aid and are evacuated to a medical treatment station as the mission permits; fatalities are evacuated to a graves registration collection point. |
| .5 | Damage assessment is submitted by secure means to the supported headquarters per SOP. |
| .6 | Continuous monitoring is initiated, using the appropriate radiac detection devices. |
| | |

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: The evaluator announces that a nuclear blast either has occurred at a given location, or that a blast is imminent. A blast can initiate platoon action/evaluation when the commander has been informed of the pending nuclear attack.

Evaluators will assess constructive casualties due to blast, heat, radiation, and Electro Magnetic Pulse (EMP). EMP casualties will be assessed by the evaluator for all communications systems (antennas, receivers/transmitters) that are exposed (not in a covered or hardened location/vehicle) during the simulated nuclear detonation.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 10C.06.04 RESPOND TO RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR BLAST

CONDITION(S): A surface or subsurface nuclear detonation has occurred.

platoon's location is within the predicted fallout zone. An M5A2 radiological fallout predictor, or substitute, is available. The platoon gets effective downwind messages at least once every three hours. NBC-2 report is furnished to the unit about 15 minutes after the detonation, or prepared by the unit; NBC-3 report is furnished about 45 minutes after the detonation; NBC-5 report and/or contamination overlay is provided about 4 hours after the detonation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The platoon's mission is performed concurrently with all other |
|---------------|---|
| .2 | The platoon is advised of estimated time of fallout arrival and subordinate elements are notified. |
| .3 | Continuous monitoring is maintained using the appropriate radiac detector devices. |
| .4 | Equipment, munitions, POL, food, and water are protected from |
| .5 | Personnel take protective measures to minimize fallout |
| .6 | NBC-4 reports are forwarded, as required, to the supported command element by secure means. |
| .7 | Unit total dose information is measured using the appropriate radiac detector devices and report to the supported command element using available secure means. |
| .8 | Exposure is minimized while the command element determine if relocation to a clean area is necessary. |
| .9 | Personnel provide first aid treatment to casualties in a nuclear environment while minimizing selves and casualties to |
| .10 | Casualties and fatalities are assessed. |
| .11 | Vehicles are assessed for damage. |
| EVALUATOR INS | STRUCTIONS: Commander is advised of estimated time of fallout |

PERSONNEL PROTECTIVE MEASURES

Personnel take the following measures to minimize fallout effects:

- Place a wet cloth across mouth and nose.
- Make the AAV as air tight as possible.
- Utilize outer garments, such as ponchos, to the maximum extent possible.
- Keep the inside of the vehicle as clean as possible.

TASK: 10C.06.05 PERFORM RADIOLOGICAL DECONTAMINATION

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: Fallout has ceased, and personnel and equipment are hazard to personnel does not allow time for the radiation to decay to a minimum level. Time and tactical situation permits hasty decontamination. Decontamination support is not available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The platoon commander establishes decontamination priorities. |
|-----|---|
| .2 | A hasty decontamination point is established out of the |
| .3 | Movement to the decontaminated site is controlled and is |
| .4 | Decontamination personnel wear appropriate protective clothing and equipment. |
| .5 | Hasty decontamination of equipment and vehicles using appropriate expedient devices occurs. (KI) |
| .6 | Contaminated areas are marked with NATO standard NBC markers. |
| .7 | Adequacy of decontamination is determined. |
| .8 | Contaminated materials are discarded according to tactical SOP, marked as contaminated, and location is provided to |
| .9 | Decontamination personnel are decontaminated as necessary. |
| .10 | Operational Exposure Guidance (OEG) is not exceeded. |
| .11 | Total dose information for the hasty decontamination area is recorded and reported to higher headquarters. |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

EXPEDIENT DECONTAMINATION

The rule of thumb for expedient decontamination is wet on wet and dry on dry. If the contamination is wet, utilize buckets of water or if possible, splash the AAVs into a body of water. If the contaminant is dry, simply brush it off the vehicles and personnel.

| TASK: 10C.06.06 CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA | | |
|--|--|--|
| $\overline{	ext{CONDITION(S)}}$: The tactical situation forces the AAV platoon to cross a contaminated area. | | |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE | | |
| .1 The platoon's reconnaissance element is provided the turnback | | |
| .2 Reconnaissance element is dispatched to reconnoiter new area. | | |
| .3 The platoon crosses expected contaminated area while employing contamination avoidance techniques. | | |
| .4 Operational Exposure Guidance (OEG) is not exceeded. | | |
| .5 After clearing the contaminated area, the degree of personnel and equipment contamination is determined. | | |
| .6 Decontamination priorities are established and performed as | | |
| .7 The platoon commander records the unit total dose information and reports the results to higher headquarters. | | |
| EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator will provide the AAV platoon commander with turnback and dose rates, if higher headquarters does not provide it. | | |
| KEY INDICATORS: None. | | |
| TACV. 100.06.07 DDEDADE EOD A EDIENDIV NUCLEAD CEDIVE | | |

TASK: 10C.06.07 PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon commander receives a friendly nuclear 21-40, pages 6--24 and 6--15. The platoon is within Minimum Safe Distance (MSD) 2 to 3.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon commander applies the STRIKWARN to the situation map within 5 minutes after message receipt.
- .2 ____ Pertinent information regarding the planned detonation (time of burst, ground zero, fallout coverage, MSD, etc.) is available to the platoon commander.

| .3 | Unit is advised of its' vulnerability to the burst (within MSD 1, 2 or 3) and residual contamination (within predicted |
|---------------------|--|
| . 4 | Unit is advised of the measures needed to prevent casualties, damage, and extended interference with the mission. |
| .5 | Unit implements protective measures, as directed by higher headquarters, consistent with the mission. |
| .6 | All platoon personnel minimize exposure by rolling down sleeves, buttoning collars, and wearing additional clothing |
| .7 | Personnel take cover in fighting holes, bunkers, armored vehicles, existing shelters (basements, culverts, caves, tunnels, etc.), or lie prone on open ground, as the time of |
| .8 | Vehicles are placed behind masking terrain. |
| .9 | External electronic equipment is protected from ElectroMagnetic Pulse (EMP) and Transient Radiation Effects on |
| .10 | All loose items (small weapons, tools, etc.) and highly flammable/explosive items (POL, propellants, etc.) are placed in armored vehicles or shelters. |
| .11 | The platoon commander acknowledge the warning before the expected time of burst. All platoon elements have been warned and protective measures implemented. |
| olast simula | STRUCTIONS: Evaluator Simulates nuclear detonation with an artiller tor, or informs the unit that a nuclear blast has valuator assesses casualties and damage to unprotected personnel and |
| KEY INDICATO | RS: None. |
| <u>rask</u> : 10C.0 | 6.08 PREPARE FOR CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK |
| | : An AAV platoon in support is informed that chemical used in the perations and that a chemical attack is imminent. |
| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | The platoon commanders have and use chemical defense SOP which addresses chemical defense and decontamination procedures. |
| .2 | All platoon elements, if applicable, are directed to increase MOPP consistent with mission, temperature, work rate, and |
| .3 | Mission essential tasks that are difficult to perform in MOPP 4 are identified. Alternate methods of task performance, such as allowing more time, rotating or assigning additional |
| .4 | Marines perform up to standard in donning the protective mask and chemical agent poisoning and emergency decontamination. |
| | |

| .5 | The buddy system is established to facilitate monitoring/treatment for chemical agent poisoning and |
|----------------------|---|
| .6 | The platoon continues its primary mission while implementing all actions to minimize NBC casualties and damage. |
| .7 | Portions of essential equipment, munitions, POL, food, and water supplies that cannot be placed in a shelter are covered with expendable or readily decontaminated tarps, shelter |
| .8 | Detector paper is affixed to visible horizontal surfaces of protective clothing and on equipment. |
| .9 | Decontamination is checked to ensure the M11 is filled, individuals have complete serviceable decontamination kits, and there is an available water source with a supporting road |
| .10 | Potential decontamination sites are reported to higher |
| .11 | Available chemical agent alarms are set up and monitored. |
| .12 | Protective NBC equipment and supplies are properly used and maintained in a high state of serviceability. |
| .13 | Marines demonstrate a knowledge of chemical agent symptoms. |
| .14 | Radio operators pass and receive alert/warning message via headset while wearing the protective mask. |
| | STRUCTIONS: CO/OIC is informed that chemical weapons have been used er of operations and that an NBC attack is imminent. |
| KEY INDICATOR | RS: None. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10C.00 | 6.09 RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK |
| CONDITION(S) | : An AAV platoon in support is subjected to a chemical agent |
| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | Platoon personnel identify the chemical alarm and take immediate protective measures. |
| .2 | Personnel automatically mask upon notification that the enemy has used chemical weapons, or upon perceiving a suspicious odor, airborne droplets/mist, or smoke from an unknown source. |
| .3 | Marines do not unmask until given the command "UNMASK" by their immediate commander. (KI) |
| .4 | The AAV platoon continues its' primary mission for at least 4 hours while in MOPP 4. |
| ENCLOSURE (1 |) |

| .5 | Type of chemical agent is identified utilizing the M256 kit or M8 paper, and reported to the supported unit if persistent |
|-----|--|
| .6 | Contamination is located and marked with NATO standard |
| .7 | Location and type of contamination is reported to the supported command element. |
| .8 | The platoon commander determines if immediate relocation to a clean area is necessary or possible and informs the supported |
| .9 | Priorities are determined for decontamination. Decontamination support is requested by the platoon commander, |
| .10 | WIAs are decontaminated, or wrapped, and marked as contaminated if decontamination is not performed, and evacuated. Medical treatment facility is alerted. |
| .11 | KIAs are wrapped, marked as contaminated, and evacuated as mission permits. Graves registration collection point is |
| .12 | Unmasking procedure is followed if nonpersistent agent. |
| .13 | WIAs are evacuated to the medical treatment facility as |
| .14 | KIAs are evacuated to the graves registration collection point as mission permits. |
| .15 | Detector kits are serviced and returned to operation. |
| .16 | Expended chemical defense items are replaced as required. |
| .17 | The platoon commander adjusts MOPP level as required. |
| | Unit personnel are able to handle and provide first aid treatment to casualties in a chemical environment. |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Training site should support the type of activities being conducted and permit safe use of simulators and devices. Selected personnel are presented decontamination training kits and first aid treatment training devices to "treat designated casualties". Every attempt must be made to provide a realistic situation through devices, scenarios, or other aide developed through innovation. The key to a thorough evaluation is a realistic, believable, well supported situation imposed by the trainer/evaluator.

KEY INDICATORS:

CHEMICAL CASUALTIES

Chemical casualties are described as:

- Personnel without mask and hood within arms reach, without decontamination kits, or not wearing chemical protective clothing.
- Personnel not taking immediate corrective actions upon perceiving the attack, hearing a chemical agent alarm, being ordered to mask, or using incorrect masking procedures (not masking within 9 seconds), or making incorrect

use of decontamination kits/first aid treatment items.

- Marines who unmask or otherwise assume a lesser degree of MOPP without being authorized to do so.

The unmasking procedures outlined below are to be initiated after being notified to do so by higher headquarters or the immediate commander. They show procedures to be used with and without the M256 chemical agent detector kit.

- 1. Initiate unmasking when a detector kit is available.
 - a. Disarm participants.
- b. Use the detector at different points in the parameter to determine the presence of chemical agents.
- c. If no agent is detected the senior Marine present will designate two or three individual Marines to unmask 5 minutes and then remask for 10 minutes. This is to be done in the shade.
- d. If no symptoms appear, remainder of unit may unmask. However, they remain alert for symptoms.
- 2. When no detector kit is available, the following unmasking procedures will be adhered to:
 - a. Disarm participants.
- b. Two or three Marines take a deep breath, hold it, keep their eyes open, break the seal on their masks and hold the masks open for 15 seconds.
- c. With masks resealed and cleared, the Marines are checked for symptoms for next $10\ \text{minutes}$. This occurs in the shade.
- d. If no symptoms appear, the same marines break the seal of their masks, take two or three deep breaths, then clear and reseal their masks.
- e. If after 10 minutes no symptoms have appeared, the same Marines unmask for 5 minutes and the remask.
- f. If after 10 more minutes no symptoms have appeared, the rest of the unit may unmask. However, they remain alert for symptoms.

NOTE: After each unmasking, always notify higher headquarters.

TASK: 10C.06.10 PERFORM PARTIAL CHEMICAL DECONTAMINATION

<u>CONDITION(S)</u>: Personnel and equipment have been contaminated by a Emergency decontamination has been accomplished. Time is not available for complete decontamination. The hazard is such that partial decontamination is required. All personnel are maintaining a maximum MOPP.

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE | | | |
|------------|---|--|--|--|
| .1 | Platoon personnel decontaminate individual weapons and equipment using appropriate decontamination kits. | | | |
| .2 | The platoon command determines the extent of decontamination required and decontamination priorities are established. | | | |
| .3 | Contaminated protective covers are removed, decontaminated, or | | | |
| .4 | Decontamination procedures are appropriate to items being decontaminated. (KI) | | | |
| .5 | Platoon personnel conduct hasty decontamination of equipment and vehicles using appropriate expedient devices. | | | |
| .6 | Adequacy of decontamination is determined. If inadequate: | | | |
| | a. Procedures are repeated. | | | |
| | b. Decontamination support is requested. | | | |
| | c. Risk of using equipment is accepted. | | | |
| .7 | Contaminated materials are discarded according to tactical SOP, | | | |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

DECONTAMINATION PROCEDURES

marked as contaminated, and location provided to higher

_ The platoon commander reduces MOPP level, as feasible.

- 1. Initial decontamination of platoon equipment, vehicles, and crew-served weapons may be accomplished by:
- a. Removing all gross contamination with sticks or other improvised devices which are buried after use.
- b. Utilizing decontamination apparatus to spray areas frequently used or touched. (Water is used in a training environment).
- 2. Contaminated items that may need special decontamination treatment are:
- a. POL, food, and water containers and munitions. These are washed with soapy water, rinsed, and thoroughly air dried.
- b. Communications equipment and other electronic equipment. Decontaminated with hot air, by weathering, or all metal parts are wiped.
- c. Optical instruments are blotted with rags and then wiped with lens cleaning solution or organic solvent.
- 3. Adequacy of decontamination is determined using the chemical agent detector

kit. If contamination is still present, decontaminate again.

- 4. Hasty decontamination procedures can be developed in the vehicle wash down phase and the MOPP gear exchange phase.
- a. Vehicle wash down phase: Vehicle washdown should be completed within an hour for best results. If available, the most expedient manner for AAVs would be the "splash" a body of water such as a river or the ocean. The tactical situation may require a decontamination apparatus to be requested from higher headquarters.
- b. MOPP gear exchange phase: MOPP gear exchange is the exchange of protective clothing as soon as the tactical situation permits or within 6 hours of being contaminated. Proper security must be arranged. The buddy system is utilized. The area needs to be continually checked to be sure it is free of contamination. Once decontamination procedures have been completed, personnel may unmask to provide relief from the MOPP 4 posture.

TASK: 10C.06.11 COORDINATE FOR COMPLETE DECONTAMINATION OF EQUIPMENT

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: While in support, the AAV platoon's equipment has been chemical agent. Emergency decontamination has been accomplished. Time is now available for complete decontamination, and support is available upon request.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The platoon commander coordinates with the decontamination unit as to time of arrival, supplies; equipment, and personnel to be furnished to his contaminated unit. The estimated time the decontamination will be completed is included in this |
|--------------|--|
| .2 | The platoon commander requests route clearance to personnel decontamination station/equipment decontamination station (PDS/EDS) assembly area. The platoon's advance party (personnel to augment decontamination operation and establish |
| .3 | The platoon arrives at PDS/EDS assembly area and organizes for |
| .4 | Decontamination begins as scheduled. |
| .5 | The platoon reorganizes in a clean area upwind of residual contamination and prepares for resumption of mission. |
| .6 | The platoon commander adjusts MOPP level, as feasible. |
| EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATO | RS: None. |
| ENCLOSURE (1 |) |

SECTION 10D

MINE/COUNTER MINE PLATOON

INDEX OF TASKS

| | | | | | PAGE |
|-------|------|-------|------------|--|---------|
| MPS : | 10D. | .01 - | ASSIGNMENT | TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS | |
| | 1) | TASK | 10D.01.01 | CONDUCT INITIAL PLANNING | 10-D-1 |
| | 2) | TASK | 10D.01.02 | RESPOND TO SUPPORTED UNIT | 10-D-2 |
| | 3) | TASK | 10D.01.03 | COORDINATE GATHERING AND DISSEMINATION OF INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION | 10-D-2 |
| | 4) | TASK | 10D.01.04 | COORDINATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING | 10-D-3 |
| | 5) | TASK | 10D.01.05 | COORDINATE LOGISTICS PLANNING | 10-D-4 |
| | 6) | TASK | 10D.01.06 | CONDUCT COMBAT REPORTING | 10-D-6 |
| MPS : | 10D. | .02 - | AMPHIBIOUS | <u>OPERATIONS</u> | |
| | 1) | TASK | 10D.02.01 | CONDUCT PLANNING | 10-D-7 |
| | 2) | TASK | 10D.02.02 | PREPARE FOR EMBARKATION | 10-D-8 |
| | 3) | TASK | 10D.02.03 | EMBARK AAV | 10-D-9 |
| | 4) | TASK | 10D.02.04 | PREPARE FOR DEMARKATION | 10-D-9 |
| | 5) | TASK | 10D.02.05 | CONDUCT DEBARKATION | 10-D-11 |
| | 6) | TASK | 10D.02.06 | CONDUCT SHIP TO SHORE MOVEMENT | 10-D-11 |
| | 7) | TASK | 10D.02.07 | EVACUATE DISABLED AAV | 10-D-13 |
| | 8) | TASK | 10D.02.08 | RECOVERY OF WATERBORNE AAV | 10-D-14 |
| MPS : | 10D. | .03 - | SUBSEQUENT | OPERATIONS ASHORE | |
| | 1) | TASK | 10D.03.01 | PREPARE TO OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA | 10-D-16 |
| | 2) | | | PREPARE FOR TACTICAL MOVEMENT FROM ASSEMBLY | 10-D-16 |
| | 3) | TASK | 10D.03.03 | CONDUCT PASSAGE OF LINES | 10-D-19 |
| | 4) | TASK | 10D.03.04 | SUPPORT BREACHING OPERATIONS | 10-D-20 |
| | 5) | TASK | 10D.03.05 | CROSS THE SP/LOD | 10-D-21 |
| | 6) | TASK | 10D.03.06 | EMPLOY MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES | 10-D-22 |
| | 7) | TASK | 10D.03.07 | MOVE BY TRAVELING | 10-D-23 |
| | 8) | TASK | 10D.03.08 | MOVE BY TRAVELING OVERWATCH | 10-D-23 |
| | 9) | TASK | 10D.03.09 | MOVE BY BOUNDING OVERWATCH | 10-D-24 |

| | 10) | TASK | 10D.03.10 | CONDUCT TACTICAL HALT | 10-D-24 |
|-----|-----|-------|------------|---|---------|
| | 11) | TASK | 10D.03.11 | CONDUCT NIGHT MOVEMENT | 10-D-25 |
| | 12) | TASK | 10D.03.12 | CONDUCT AAV GUNNERY OPERATIONS | 10-D-26 |
| | 13) | TASK | 10D.03.13 | ESTABLISH DEFENSIVE POSITIONS | 10-D-27 |
| | 14) | TASK | 10D.03.14 | EMPLOYMENT OF AAV WEAPONS IN THE DEFENSE | 10-D-29 |
| | 15) | TASK | 10D.03.15 | EMPLOYMENT OF SMOKE SCREEN | 10-D-30 |
| MPS | 10D | .04 - | SUPPLY AND | MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS | |
| | 1) | TASK | 10D.04.01 | CONDUCT RECOVERY OPERATIONS | 10-D-31 |
| | 2) | TASK | 10D.04.02 | CONDUCT SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS | 10-D-32 |
| MPS | 10D | .05 - | CONTINUING | ACTIONS BY MARINES | |
| | 1) | TASK | 10D.05.01 | IMPLEMENTING DISCIPLINE | 10-D-34 |
| | 2) | TASK | 10D.05.02 | CONDUCT PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) | 10-D-35 |
| | 3) | TASK | 10D.05.03 | DEMONSTRATE DISPERSION | 10-D-35 |
| | 4) | TASK | 10D.05.04 | EMPLOY COVER AND CONCEALMENT | 10-D-36 |
| | 5) | TASK | 10D.05.05 | REACT TO DIRECT FIRES | 10-D-37 |
| | 6) | TASK | 10D.05.06 | REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE | 10-D-37 |
| | 7) | TASK | 10D.05.07 | ESTABLISH TACTICAL RADIO COMMUNICATION | 10-D-38 |
| | 8) | TASK | 10D.05.08 | RESPOND TO ENEMY ELECTRONIC WARFARE (EW) | 10-D-39 |
| | 9) | TASK | 10D.05.09 | RESPOND TO ENEMY AIR THREAT | 10-D-40 |
| | 10) | TASK | 10D.05.10 | PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR | 10-D-41 |
| | 11) | TASK | 10D.05.11 | PROCESS CASUALTY EVACUATIONS | 10-D-42 |
| | 12) | | | IMPLEMENTING AAV OPERATIONAL SAFETY | 10-0-43 |
| MDQ | 100 | | | R NBC OPERATIONS | 10 D 43 |
| MID | | | | | 10 D 45 |
| | | | | NBC OPERATIONS | 10-D-45 |
| | 2) | TASK | 10D.06.02 | PREPARE FOR NUCLEAR ATTACK | 10-D-45 |
| | 3) | | | RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR | 10-D-46 |
| | 4) | | | RESPOND TO RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR | 10 5 47 |
| | | | | | 10-D-47 |
| | 5) | TASK | 10D.06.05 | PERFORM RADIOLOGICAL DECONTAMINATION | 10-D-48 |

| 6) | TASK 10D.06.06 | CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA | 10-D-49 |
|-----|----------------|--|---------|
| 7) | TASK 10D.06.07 | PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE | 10-D-49 |
| 8) | TASK 10D.06.08 | PREPARE FOR CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK | 10-D-50 |
| 9) | TASK 10D.06.09 | RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK | 10-D-51 |
| 10) | TASK 10D.06.10 | PERFORM PARTIAL CHEMICAL DECONTAMINATION | 10-D-54 |
| 11) | | COORDINATE FOR COMPLETE DECONTAMINATION OF | 10-D-56 |

ENCLOSURE (1)

10-D-iii

MPS 10D.01 - ASSIGNMENT TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS

TASK: 10D.01.01 CONDUCT INITIAL PLANNING

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: An MCM platoon is given the mission to support tactical as an attached unit or in direct support.

| .1 | The platoon commander promptly reports to the supported commander for planning. |
|----|--|
| .2 | The platoon commander conducts mission analysis. |
| .3 | The platoon commander issues a warning order to section |
| .4 | The platoon commander develops an AAV estimate of |
| .5 | The platoon commander participates in a leaders recon with both the supported unit and other supporting element leaders to ensure AAV's are fully integrated into the supported unit's |
| .6 | The platoon commander recommends routes/axis of advance, determines time and distance of AAV movement, employment methods, and communication requirements to the supported unit. |
| .7 | Incorporates Operational Risk Management (ORM) into planning. |
| .8 | The platoon commander develops appropriate plans after receipt of the supported commander's decision. |
| .9 | The platoon commander attends the issuance of the supported unit's five paragraph order. |

.10 ____ The platoon commander issues his five paragraph order.

.11 ____ All changes in operational readiness of AAVs are promptly reported to the supported unit or parent command.

.12 ____ The platoon sergeant coordinates all maintenance, recovery, and logistic requirements of AAV unit and establishes appropriate support arrangement. (KI)

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: The focus of this task is on the AAV platoon leaders as they fulfill their basic responsibilities to the supported unit. The evaluator should note that some of the requirements are one time actions and some are repetitive actions that will reoccur as the tactical situation changes.

KEY INDICATORS:

THE MANAGEMENT

Ensure commanders allocate 3/4 of available time for planning and preparation by subordinate units. Time is allocated at all levels. In order to fulfill requirements, commanders manage available time to ensure that appropriate rest (sleep) periods are available (tactical situation permitting) in order to ensure

that peak efficiency and alertness is maintained.

OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)

Ensure commanders utilize the five step ORM process, per MCO 3500.27, in their planning which includes: identify hazards, asses hazards, make risk decision, implement controls and supervise.

TYPES OF SUPPORT

Ensure that the type of support to be provided is determined for logistical purposes. In direct support the parent unit is responsible for logistical needs. If attached, the supported unit is responsible for logistical needs. The third category, general support, denotes that the AAV unit is supporting the entire force without priority to any given element. In general support, the parent command retains command, control, and logistics responsibility.

ROUTES/AXIS OF ADVANCE

Ensure that routes to be followed are carefully analyzed to include the use of ${\tt METT-TSL}.$

TASK: 10D.01.02 RESPOND TO SUPPORTED UNIT

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The MCM platoon is assigned the mission to support The mission requires the capability to launch from ship to objective and/or operate on land during all periods of visibility

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The platoon commander adheres to the SOP of the supported unit or land, provides input from the AAV unit SOP for the |
|----|--|
| .2 | The platoon complies with the supported unit's operation |
| .3 | Enters tactical and command nets of the supported unit command element per the operations order. |
| .4 | The platoon commander provides input to the supported unit, consistent with changing tactical requirements, concerning MCM |
| .5 | Operational reports are submitted per the operations order in a timely and accurate manner. |

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: The evaluator determines if the MCM unit adhered to the supported unit's operation SOP.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 10D.01.03 COORDINATE GATHERING AND DISSEMINATION OF INTELLIGENCE

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The MCM platoon is assigned the mission to support The supported company has intelligence data to be provided to the unit.

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE | | | | | |
|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| .1 | Platoon has and uses an SOP from the parent AAV unit that provides procedures for handling intelligence matters, and addresses interoperability with supported units. | | | | | |
| .2 | .2 The platoon commander requests intelligence based on METT-TSL. | | | | | |
| .3 | All classified material is safeguarded and limited access appropriately allowed. | | | | | |
| .4 | The platoon commander stresses intelligence awareness for all assigned personnel. (KI) | | | | | |
| .5 | The platoon commander ensures intelligence information is disseminated to section elements. | | | | | |
| .6 | Platoon is aware of the supported unit's EEI's. | | | | | |
| .7 | All unit leaders within the platoon know the procedures to be used in handling EPWs (See Task 10C.5.10, PROCESS ENEMY | | | | | |
| EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. | | | | | |
| KEY INDICATO | <u>RS</u> : | | | | | |
| | INTELLIGENCE AWARENESS | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| Intelligence | awareness includes: | | | | | |
| - Knowledge of collection means available. | | | | | | |
| - Unders | tanding of intelligence capabilities and limitations. | | | | | |
| - Emphas | is on OPSEC at all levels. | | | | | |
| - Rapid | reporting of raw combat information. | | | | | |
| - Exploi | tation of information gleaned from EPWs. | | | | | |
| - Develo | pment of relevant EEIs and OIRs. | | | | | |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10D.0 | 1.04 COORDINATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING | | | | | |
| $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The MCM platoon is assigned the mission to support The supported unit is conducting communications planning for all elements. The enemy has the ability to conduct ESM and ECM operations. | | | | | | |
| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE | | | | | |
| .1 | The platoon commander coordinates with supported unit's communications officer. | | | | | |
| .2 All required communications nets are identified. | | | | | | |

| .3 | It is ensured that an adequate number of frequencies, FH data and Net IDs are allocated. |
|--------------|--|
| .4 | Plans for communications redundancy, simplicity, and brevity. |
| .5 | Plans for the use of communications procedures contained in the supported unit's SOP or prearranged signals and other visual means which allow for brevity. |
| .6 | The platoon commander identifies any interoperability |
| .7 | The platoon commander maintains a copy of the supported unit's communication SOP. |
| .8 | The platoon commander stresses communication security awareness for all personnel. |
| .9 | The platoon commander reviews the communications plan of the supported unit concerning secure voice equipment, correct key lists and edition numbers, and verifies that the MCM unit has |
| .10 | Wire communication is stressed when appropriate in static or defensive positions. |
| .11 | The platoon provides the supported unit's communications personnel with AAV-7A1 briefing/training. |
| .12 | Communications reports are included in the reports control |
| .13 | The platoon uses alternate communications methods as needed. |
| EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATO | RS: |

ALTERNATE COMMUNICATIONS

The platoon must:

- $\mbox{\sc Demonstrate}$ awareness of communications capabilities and limitations during planning.
- Be prepared to erect antenna systems, utilize hand/arm signals, and lay wire when appropriate.
 - Display cognizance of importance of communications security.

TASK: 10D.01.05 COORDINATE LOGISTICS PLANNING

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The MCM platoon is assigned in direct support of tactical

The mission requires the capability to launch from ship to objective and/or operate on land during all periods of visibility. The supported unit OpOrd calls for full use of AAV assets.

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: | \mathbf{v} . | NT • | ישדא |
|------------|-------|----------------|------|------|
| DIAMPANDO. | EVAL. | 1/ | TA 1 | TAL |

| .1 | The platoon commander conducts liaison with the supported company's staff immediately upon receipt of the mission. |
|-----|---|
| .2 | The platoon commander identifies MCM combat service support (CSS) requirements to the supported unit S-4 during the |
| .3 | AAVs comply with prescribed loads established by the unit SOP. |
| .4 | The platoon sergeant coordinates with his parent unit concerning any logistics requirements beyond the supported |
| .5 | The platoon commander ensures vehicle recovery procedures are |
| .6 | The platoon commander determines availability of AAV unit logistics and support vehicles, and informs the supported or |
| .7 | Emergency resupply procedures are established. |
| .8 | The platoon commander completes required CSS reports as designated in the reports controls system. |
| .9 | The platoon commander/platoon sergeant establishes liaison with the MAGTF CSS element as required for higher level logistic support requirements not within the capability of the |
| .10 | The platoon sergeant has a system to rapidly and correctly identify required repair parts and to request them through the appropriate supporting or parent unit. |

 $\underline{\text{EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS}}\colon$ Evaluator examines the platoon's performance throughout all phases of operations.

KEY INDICATORS:

LOGISTIC SUPPORT

Ensure the AAV unit SOP covers:

- Procedure for requesting support when in either a general or direct support role.
- Request formats.
- Standardized loads for resupply.
- Specific procedures for recovery operations.
- Procedure for 3rd echelon maintenance under field conditions.
- Procedures for replacement of major end items.
- Ensure the supported unit is briefed on logistic requirements.

TASK: 10D.01.06 CONDUCT COMBAT REPORTING

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The MCM platoon is assigned in direct support of tactical operations. The supported unit's SOP and OpOrder contain the required reports and their submission times. Additional logistic and/or administration reports may be required by the AAV platoon's parent organization.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The platoon commander develops a system to comply with supported unit's operations SOP and OpOrder reports control |
|----|--|
| .2 | The type of report, format, and submission requirements are |
| .3 | The platoon commander completes all reports required to the parent organization as scheduled. |
| .4 | Reports are submitted on time and are complete and accurate. |

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: Evaluator obtains a full listing of all required reports prior to initiation of his evaluation of the platoon and ascertains that the supported unit requirements were available.

KEY INDICATORS:

REPORTS CONTROL

Ensure OpOrd or SOP stress brevity and include the following:

- Time of submission of required reports.
- Reports are submitted on "as required basis".
- Report formats permit "exception only" reporting to facilitate brevity.
- Method of submission for reports and alternate means.

MPS 10D.02 - AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS

TASK: 10D.02.01 CONDUCT PLANNING

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The MCM platoon is in direct support of a ground unit mission to conduct an amphibious assault. The MCM platoon is embarked on ATF shipping, and has begun detailed planning.

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
|------------|---|
| .1 | The platoon commander reports to the supported unit commander, attends the initial briefing, and receives the commander's |
| .2 | The platoon commander performs mission analysis. (KI) |
| .3 | The platoon commander prepares an AAV estimate of |
| .4 | The platoon commander assists the supported unit in the preparation of planning documents. |
| .5 | The platoon commander makes recommendation on AAV utilization during the ship-to-shore movements to include formations, |
| .6 | The platoon commander coordinates MCM participation during the conduct of rehearsal. |
| .7 | The platoon commander coordinates the details of organization/embarkation of his AAVs. |
| .8 | All aspects of MCM employment are coordinated with naval control groups and ATF ships involved. |
| .9 | The platoon sergeant determines maintenance requirements for AAVs, to include recommended system for maintenance, location of maintenance personnel and equipment. |
| .10 | The platoon commander/platoon sergeant determines requirements of AAVs for fuel, oil, and other lubricants during ashore, and coordinates them with the supported unit's |
| .11 | The platoon sergeant plans for the employment of signals, marking devices, etc., for AAV control during night landings and operations ashore (e.g. GAIL lights, chemical lights). |
| .12 | The platoon commander lists safety requirements for embarking in AAVs and reviews the safety training programs for the unit |
| .13 | The platoon commander coordinates with his section leaders and crew chiefs on plans for rehearsal of infantry embarking |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

MISSION ANALYSIS

Ensure that the AAV platoon commander's analysis of the mission is per METT-TSL.

- Ensure platoon commander develops plan for any special support.
- Develops bump plan for any disabled AAV.

PREPARE FOR EMBARKATION

The MCM platoon is tasked to support an amphibious assault. The embarkation plan is being developed by the supported unit based on the scheme of maneuver and loading plan.

TASK: 10D.02.02 PREPARE FOR EMBARKATION

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The MCM platoon is tasked to support an amphibious embarkation plan is being developed by the supported unit based on the scheme of maneuver and loading plan.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ AAV representatives attend planning conferences as directed.
- The platoon commander completes required embarkation documentation and submits those tables in a timely manner.
- .3 $_$ Preparations for the embarkation of AAVs is completed prior to the arrival of assault shipping.
- .4 _____ The platoon sergeant develops plans for loading of AAVs in the correct sequence aboard assault shipping.

 $\overline{\text{EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS}}$: The evaluator must be familiar with the various documents required for the completion of the embarkation plan contained in FMFM 4-2, Amphibious Embarkation.

KEY INDICATORS:

PLANNING CONFERENCES

Ensure that planning conferences discuss:

- Embarkation of vehicles and crews.
- $\mbox{-}$ Embarkation of command, maintenance, and communication personnel requested to support vehicle commitments.
- Loading of supplies and equipment such as fuel, ammunition (both smoke and antipersonnel), and repair parts to support embarked vehicles.
 - Staffing and equipping ATF ships designated as AAV repair ships.

TASK: 10D.02.03 EMBARK AAV

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE | |
|--|---|----------------|
| .1 | The platoon sergeant ensures surf report has been submarent unit SOP. | nitted per AAV |
| .2 | Crew chief ensure all embarked personnel are wearing a life jacket with inflation cartridges and that a proper brief is conducted. | |
| .3 | The platoon commander ensures positive communications established with the ship. | is |
| .4 | The platoon commander/platoon sergeant ensures a person of all embarked Marines is submitted prior to | onnel manifest |
| .5 | The platoon sergeant ensures prewater operation checkle submitted by crew chiefs prior to splashing. | list are |
| .6 | The platoon sergeant ensures that rescue vehicles are | |
| .7 | Loading is completed as previously coordinated with the representatives at the planning conference. | ne ATF |
| .8 | The platoon sergeant ensures AAVs are gripped down wit devices on board ship. | ch appropriate |
| EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. | |
| KEY INDICATO | <u>RS</u> : | |
| | RESCUE VEHICLES | |
| | while all vehicles are potential rescue vehicles, there is the primary rescue vehicle. | e is an AAV |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10D.0 | 2.04 PREPARE FOR DEMARKATION | |
| rehearsals, | : While embarked aboard ATF shipping, the MCM platoon and the landing plan has been adjusted and promulgated ATF has imposed EMCON. | |
| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE | |
| .1 | The platoon commander conducts surf analysis based on | latest |
| .2 | The platoon commander conducts final preparation under | EMCON. |
| .3 The platoon commander attends ship pre-launch conference. | | |
| | | ENCLOSURE (1) |

| .4 | The platoon commander coordinates with ATF representatives on conduct of launch. (KI) |
|-----|---|
| .5 | Platoon personnel are briefed on conduct of launch. |
| .6 | The platoon sergeant ensures ships ventilation fans are turned on before engines are started and warmed up. |
| .7 | AAVs are marked with temporary chalk marks, etc., for ease of identification be embarked Marines. |
| .8 | Crews have completed embarkation rehearsal and safety briefs are conducted with embarked infantry per the AAV unit SOP. |
| .9 | Crews release, remove, and store the Grippes in the proper |
| .10 | Crews embark troops and equipment per published time |
| .11 | Crews ensure all gear is properly stored and secured. |
| .12 | The platoon sergeant collects and submits signed verified manifest roster and pre-water checklist to ship's 1st Lieutenant and ensures water tight integrity. |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

COORDINATION PREPARATIONS

Ensure that the Platoon Commander discusses the following with naval representatives and the AAV crews:

- Type of launch
- Weather, sea and tidal conditions
- Prelaunch warm up time and sequence Ballast conditions
- Time for undogging AAVs
- Assignment of boat teams to AAVs
- Time to load man AAVs
- Staging AAVs
- Time to launch
- Launch signals
- Barriers
- Radio checks per EMCON conditions
- Beach characteristics
- Boat lane location
- Multiple vehicle launches from a single ship
- Simulates launches from multiple ships

- Launch interval
- Launch sequence

 - Hand and arm signals
 - Flag and flashing light signals
 - Frequencies and call signs
 - Designation of wave guides and commanders
 - Naval Control Group command and control
 - Recovery of disabled vehicles
 - Signals for emergency lifting or NGF
 - Stalled vehicle
 - procedures in well deck
 - Magnetic compass information

TASK: 10D.02.05 CONDUCT DEBARKATION

| $\underline{	ext{CONDITION(S)}}$: Preparation for launch are being completed; AAVs are equipment are loaded. |
|--|
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 Crews make final preparation for launch on signal. (KI) |
| .2 AAVs move to the "ready line" in proper sequence. |
| .3 AAVs launch on the signal of well deck control officer. |
| .4 AAVs accelerate and maneuver to clear stern of ship. |
| .5 AAVs complete debarkation in sequence per published time |
| EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATORS: |
| FINAL PREPARATION FOR LAUNCH |
| Final preparations include: |
| - Ensure leaders keep crews alert and advised of time remaining to launch. |
| - Ensure Navy well deck personnel are briefed and look for plenum indicator to be in "up" position before splash. |
| - Ensure AAVs move to ready line without ground guides. |
| TASK: 10D.02.06 CONDUCT SHIP TO SHORE MOVEMENT |
| $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The MCM platoon has completed debarkation from naval ships proceeding toward the assigned beach. |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 The AAVs form in waves per the landing plan. (KI) |
| .2 The platoon commander maintains communications with the Primary Control Ship (PCS). (KI) |
| .3 Platoon maintains internal communications per unit SOP. |
| .4 Proper interval between AAVs is maintained per unit SOP. |
| .5 The LOD is crossed per the landing plan. |
| .6 Emergency operations/vehicle recoveries are conducted as |
| .7 Wave commanders control maneuver and maintain the formation within the wave. |
| .8 The wave commander controls supporting fire of the AAV unit. |

| .9 | Smoke is utilized for screening, as required. |
|---------------|---|
| .10 | The wave commander controls all changes to waterborne formations outside the surf zone. |
| .11 | The wave commander controls movement of AAVs through cleared |
| EVALUATOR INS | TRUCTIONS: None. |

KEY INDICATORS:

LANDING PLAN

The landing plan is the plan of the supported unit commander for landing his troops, equipment, and supplies in the proper formations, on the assigned beaches and landing zones, and at the times dictated by the scheme of maneuver. It provides for the control afloat of landing craft, AAVs, helicopters, and floating dumps. Normally, the landing force landing plan is prepared as Appendix 3 (Landing Plan) to Annex B (Amphibious Operations) of the operations order. The documents/tables which deal with the troops and their equipment are included as tabs to the landing plan. The plan for landing supplies is contained in the appendix to the CSS plan. The AAV element commander prepares or helps to prepare the amphibious vehicle assignment table, the serial assignment table, the amphibious vehicle availability table, the amphibious vehicle employment plan, assault schedule, and the landing diagram.

ASSAULT SCHEDULE

The assault schedule prescribes the formation, composition, and timing of waves to be landed over the beaches. Both scheduled and nonscheduled waves are covered. Planning starts at the BLT level. BLT commanders determine the formation and composition of their respective waves; scheduled and on call.

The AAV commander provides input to the BLT commander and naval operations personnel on the PCS ship during the preparation of the assault schedule.

LANDING CRAFT AND AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE ASSIGNMENT TABLE

The landing craft and amphibious vehicle assignment table depicts the organization of troop units into boat teams and the assignment of boat team to waves or to a serialized element of a nonscheduled wave. It is prepared by the commanding officer of troops of each ship. The AAV commander advises supported commanders and staffs with respect to vehicle capacity and methods of employment. AAV platoon commanders on each ship assist in the preparation of this document.

SERIAL ASSIGNMENT TABLE

A serial is a group of troop units, supporting units, and equipment embarked on the same ship and which, for tactical or logistical reasons, are to be loaded on a specified beach at approximately the same time. The serial assignment table shows the following in tabulated form:

- -Serial number.
- -Title of unit.
- -Approximate number of personnel in the serial.

- -Material, vehicles, and equipment in the serial.
- -Number and type of AAVs or landing craft required to transport the serial.
- -Ship on which the serial is embarked.

-Remarks to include the landing category, designated wave, on call wave, or nonscheduled unit. Such remarks aid in rapid identification and location of the serial by control agencies.

LANDING SEQUENCE TABLE

Detailed plans for the ship to objectives movement of on scheduled units are set forth in the landing sequence table. It is used by troop and naval agencies as the principal document in executing and controlling the movement of nonscheduled units. The completed table forms the basis for embarkation and loading plans of the units concerned. The platoon commander advises as to which vehicle best meets the landing force requirement; where it would be best embarked, and other considerations pertaining to AAV employment.

LANDING DIAGRAM

The landing diagram is the graphic means to illustrate the plan for ship to objective movement of the scheduled waves of an assault unit. Each AAV is identified by two numbers: the first indicating the wave; the second, the position of the vehicle in the wave. The platoon commander prepares or assists in the preparation of this document.

WAVE CONTROL

The AAV wave commander maintains communications with the Primary Control Ship (PCS) and with the AAVs in the wave. The wave commander controls the wave to ensure it crosses the LOD on time, proceeds down the boat lane and touches down on time.

TASK: 10D.02.07 EVACUATE DISABLED AAV

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: An MCM platoon participating in a ship to shore movement AAVs become disabled. A standby vehicle or boat is being moved into place to transfer the embarked personnel.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The platoon sergeant designates a specific AAV as rescue vehicle during surf and waterborne operations. |
|----|---|
| .2 | Crew chiefs use appropriate day/night distress signals per |
| .3 | Wave commander and platoon sergeant are notified by radio/appropriate signals, of the nature of the problem and |
| .4 | Crew member(s) immediately notify embarked personnel of |
| .5 | Driver keeps master switch on, locks brakes, shifts transmission to neutral, places mode selector switch to "water tracks," and advances throttle to 1800 RPMs if engine is operable. |

| .6 Driver attempts | restart if engine is inoperable. |
|---|---|
| .7 Crew member ass | sists embarked personnel topside for transfer. |
| .8 Embarked troops disabled vehicl | are correctly and safely transferred from the e. |
| | eses the cargo hatch, after personnel are prevent taking on water. |
| .10 Evacuation pro | cedures are completed for the disabled vehicle. |
| | are knowledgeable of safety procedures to be used sinking or when it has sunk. |
| EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Nor | ne. |
| KEY INDICATORS: | |
| | TRANSFER OF PERSONNEL |
| are inflated once topside. time and remain as "buddy te | water, the crew will ensure that their life jackets If time permits they will enter the water two at a eams". The rescue vehicle will position itself rehicle. A boathook is used to assist in retrieving |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10D.02.08 RECOVERY C | OF WATERBORNE AAV |
| <pre>CONDITION(S): An AAV is dis crew has notified the platoo</pre> | sabled in the water with no embarked troops. The on sergeant per unit SOP. |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE | |
| .1 The crew prepar | res the vehicle of towing. |
| .2 Rescue vehicle | approaches vehicle on the leeward side. |
| .3 Tow lines are o | connected per the unit SOP. |
| .4 All hatches on | both vehicles are closed, per unit SOP. |
| | ster switch on, locks brakes, shifts transmission to vehicle is towed to high water |
| .6 Tow lines are t per unit SOP. | hen disconnected and tow bar/cables are connected |
| EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The concerning towing procedures | e evaluator must be familiar with the unit SOP |

KEY INDICATORS:

PREPARATION FOR TOWING

Driver keeps master switch "on" shifts transmission to neutral, places mode selector switch in "water tracks", and advances had throttle to 1800 RPMs if operable. Disconnects Power Take Off (PTO) and Hydrostatic Steering Unit (HSU) as necessary.

MPS 10D.03 - SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE

TASK: 10D.03.01 PREPARE TO OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}\colon \text{ An MCM platoon is ordered to move to an occupied assembly platoon is required to be task organized upon arrival in the assembly area, and to be ready to embark Marines, their weapons, ammunition, and equipment.}$

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
|--------------|---|
| .1 | The platoon commander task organizes and assigns AAVs to the |
| .2 | The platoon sergeant coordinates resupply means. |
| .3 | The platoon commander considers OPSEC measures during the planning of the movement. |
| .4 | The platoon commander coordinates designated routes with the supported unit to resolve movement schedules, and identify known obstacles, location of friendly rear units, the location of any passed enemy units or obstacles, etc. |
| .5 | The platoon commander plans $\operatorname{route}(s)$ of march that offers the most cover and concealment. |
| .6 | The platoon commander develops, in coordination with the supported units FSC, a fire support plan, and receives frequencies and call signs of fire control nets. |
| .7 | The platoon commander, in conjunction with the supported unit, dispatches a quartering party to coordinate the arrival at, and defense of, the assembly area. |
| .8 | The platoon commander demonstrates knowledge of planning and time and distance when designating control measures (check points, release points, etc.) to ensure an orderly move to the |
| .9 | The platoon commander provides details of vehicle markings to the supported unit in order for them to identify assigned |
| EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATO | RS: None. |

TASK: 10D.03.02 PREPARE FOR TACTICAL MOVEMENT FROM ASSEMBLY AREA

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The MCM platoon is attached in direct support of an making final preparations for offensive operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE _ The platoon commander acknowledges receipt of order. ___ The platoon commander issues warning order to sections/subordinate elements. (KI) .3 ____ Crew chiefs conduct vehicle operational checks. _ Vehicles are prepared for the operation, ammunition is replenished, and other special preparation requirements are completed prior to the commencement of startup procedures. .5 ____ The platoon commander establishes liaison with the supported unit and receives further guidance. .6 ____ The platoon commander establishes liaison with the supported unit and receive further guidance from the commander. .7 ____ The MCM platoon commander conducts a brief detailing AAV support during the combined infantry/AAV operation, and coordinates immediate actions, i.e., ambushes, air strikes, _ The platoon commander utilizes a terrain model, sketch, or other training aids when briefing the plan and/or conducting .9 ____ The platoon movement order is issued to section/subordinate .10 ____ The platoon commander allows the opportunity for AAV personnel questions and comments. .11 ____ The AAV platoon commander ensures all AAV personnel understand the plan and are cognizant of their duties and .12 ____ AAV crew members are briefed on rules of engagement. .13 ____ Crew chiefs ensure all gear is properly secured on both the interior and exterior of vehicles. .14 ____ Route from present location to SP/LOD is reconnoitered to determine the time the movement must be initiated in order to .15 ____ The platoon commander conducts pre-combat inspection. .16 ____ Deficiencies noted during pre-combat inspection are .17 ____ The platoon commander coordinates with supported elements to verify signals/communications and actions to be taken upon Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits. .18 .19 ____ Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen OPSEC vulnerability. .20 ____ COMSEC material is issued, as appropriate.

.21 ____ Vehicles are started simultaneously.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

WARNING ORDER

Ensure that the warning order includes:

- General information on the situation.
- Units to make the move and the anticipated sequence.
- Special logistic support and delivery times required for the operation.
- Anticipated time of movement.
- Time and place the formal order is to be issued and who is to attend.

MOVEMENT ORDER

Ensure the movement order includes:

- Control measures.
- Time for radio check.
- Time to start engines.
- Time SP/LOD is to be crossed.
- Order of march.
- Rate of march, catch-up speed, and interval.
- Actions at halts and upon contact.
- Route clearance time, if applicable.
- Initial techniques of movement/formations.

COORDINATION WITH SUPPORTED UNIT

Ensure prior coordination between supported and supporting organizations includes discussion of at least:

- Route of advance.
- Signals and communications.
- Actions upon contact.
- Limitations of the supported unit.
- Supportability of the mission.

OPERATION ORDER

Ensure the operation order, either verbal or written when time permits, contains at least the following:

- Orientation.
- Clearly stated mission and order of priorities.
- Situation.
- Commanders' intent.
- Scheme of maneuver and available fire support.
- Definition of all control measures to be used; checkpoints, phase lines, etc.
 - Identification of each specific objectives to be seized.
 - Any limiting instructions to temper engagements with enemy forces.
- $\mbox{-}$ Techniques of movement to be used to include designation of leading, trailing, and overwatch elements.
 - Identification of overwatch positions to be occupied.
 - Communication/signals to be used.
 - Actions at the objective.
 - Focus of effort.
 - Be prepared for follow-on order missions.
 - Disabled vehicle disposition.
- Critical logistics functions; i.e., rearming, refueling, emergency repairs.

TASK: 10D.03.03 CONDUCT PASSAGE OF LINES

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The MCM platoon is located in the assembly area with They have been given the task to conduct a forward passage of lines.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ The platoon commander acknowledges receipt of the order.
- .2 ____ The platoon commander issues warning order to sections/subordinate elements.
- .3 ____ The route/axis of advance to include control measures are planned in detail. (KI)

| .4 The platoon commander completes plan, issues order, and initiates communication checks with stationary unit. | | |
|---|--|--|
| .5 Conduct movement to passage lane as briefed. | | |
| .6 Co-locate unit CP with stationary unit's CP. | | |
| .7 Platoon conducts passage of lines. | | |
| .8 The platoon commander ensures that supported unit has completed battle hand-over. | | |
| EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None. | | |
| KEY INDICATORS: | | |
| <u>CONTROL MEASURES</u> | | |
| Control measures should identify: | | |
| - Designation of unit to pass. | | |
| - The enemy situation. | | |
| - Friendly situation and positions. | | |
| - Time of passage. | | |
| - Coordinate passage points and lanes. | | |
| - Number and type of vehicles to pass. | | |
| - Patrol routes and OP locations. | | |
| - Obstacle types and locations of contaminated areas. | | |
| - Fire support plans. | | |
| - Vehicle locations and attack positions. | | |
| - CS and CSS to be provided and location assets. | | |
| TASK: 10D.03.04 SUPPORT BREACHING OPERATIONS | | |
| $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The MCM platoon is task organized to support offensive operations. | | |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE | | |
| .1 The platoon commander acknowledges receipt of order. | | |
| .2 The platoon commander issues warning orders to section/subordinate elements. | | |
| ENCLOSURE (1) | | |

| .3 The platoon commander establishes liaison with supported unit and receives commander's intent. |
|---|
| .4 The platoon commander issues an order detailing actions required t support the breach. (KI) |
| .5 Conduct the breach. |
| EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATORS: |
| MISSION REQUIREMENTS |
| These include: |
| - 100 percent redundancy in breaching assets assigned to mission. |
| - Assign section positions and sectors of fire to include route to hide and fire positions. |
| - Location of obstacles. |
| - Brief mine field report. |
| TASK: 10D.03.05 CROSS THE SP/LOD |
| <u>CONDITION(S)</u> : The MCM platoon is supporting offensive operations. The addition to having direct and indirect fire and air capability, has EW capability. The MCM platoon has received the supported unit's order which specified the SP/LOD location and crossing time. |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 The platoon's lead elements cross the SP/LOD on time. |
| .2 Crossing the SP/LOD is accomplished with minimal confusion and minimal radio communications. |
| .3 AAVs and supported unit crosses LOD in designated order of |
| .4 Platoon elements move out using designated movement techniques/formations. (KI) |
| .5 Unit crosses release point on time. |
| EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATORS: |
| TECHNIQUES OF MOVEMENT |

TECHNIQUES OF MOVEMENT

The various techniques of movement are described in general in task 10C.3.6 and specifically as follows:

- Traveling (See task 10C.3.8)
- Traveling Overwatch (See task 10C.3.8)
- Bounding Overwatch (See task 10C.3.9)

If a particular movement technique is not specified in the movement order, the AAV platoon commander recommends a technique most appropriate to the enemy situation and terrain.

TASK: 10D.03.06 EMPLOY MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES

<u>CONDITION(S)</u>: The MCM platoon is task organized to support offensive operations. The enemy situation and operating area requires the employment of varying movement techniques. The enemy, in addition to direct and indirect fire and air capabilities, has EW capability. The supported unit's OpOrd, based on input from the MCM platoon commander, specifies movement techniques and signals to alter the movement techniques and formations, as well as procedures to be used upon contact with the enemy.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The MCM platoon maintains air/ground security at all times. | |
|-------|--|----|
| .2 | The platoon commander maintains positive control over lead, flandand rear security elements. | k, |
| .3 | The platoon commander recommends changes to the formation as the enemy situation changes. | |
| 4 | The platoon commander recommends movement techniques that make the best use of the terrain. | |
| .5 | Moving unit communicates internally using visual signals, if | |
| .6 | Arrival at established control measures is reported to higher | |
| .7 | The platoon responds immediately to the supported unit commander if required. | , |
| .8 | Crew members demonstrate knowledge of procedures to be used upon contact with enemy forces. | |
| .9 | AAVs employ smoke and suppressive fires for self-protection upon initial contact or as directed by the supported unit. | |
| .10 _ | _ AAVs use appropriate techniques of movement when crossing danger areas. (KI) | r |
| .11 _ | _ Formations are constantly adjusted to compensate for the tactic situation and the terrain. | al |

 $\underline{\text{EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS}}\colon$ Evaluators observe elements/entire unit during each move and apply the 90 percent rule.

KEY INDICATORS:

CROSSING DANGER AREAS

Upon reaching a danger area (e.g., wooded area, defile, bridge, urban area, obstacles to be cleared, etc.), the MCM unit establishes local vehicle security, establishes overwatch positions, and dismounts embarked personnel to secure the danger area as necessary. MCM unit moves danger area by echelon or as situation dictates. Coordination between the infantry and the supporting AAV unit is critical to the successful completion of the task.

critical to the successful completion of the task. TASK: 10D.03.07 MOVE BY TRAVELING $\underline{\mathtt{CONDITION}(S)}$: The MCM platoon moves by traveling when enemy contact is speed is essential. STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE _ AAVs move in the ordered formation. Sections/Subordinate units move by traveling. _ All elements move at the maximum safe speed. .4 ____ Platoon formations use covered and concealed routes to maximum extent possible. _ The platoon commander reports crossing control measures as **EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:** Ninety percent rule applies. **KEY INDICATORS:** None. TASK: 10D.03.08 MOVE BY TRAVELING OVERWATCH CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon moves by traveling overwatch when contact is possible. STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE .1 ____ MCM platoon's lead element continues to move, acting as the base unit, maintaining the rate and direction of march. (KI) .2 ____ Trailing elements move at variable speeds frequently pausing to overwatch movement of the lead element. .3 ____ Trailing elements key their movement to terrain and overwatch positions so they can support the lead element if that element _ The platoon commander reports the crossing of control measures to the supported commander as specified.

MCO 3501.29 17 MAY 99

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: Evaluator advises the platoon commander that he is entering the rear of the battle area and enemy contact is possible.

KEY INDICATORS:

LEAD ELEMENT MOVEMENT

The lead element's rate of movement must be governed by the ability of the trailing elements to arrive at and establish appropriate overwatch positions.

TASK: 10D.03.09 MOVE BY BOUNDING OVERWATCH

prepared to overwatch.

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The MCM platoon moves by bounding overwatch when contact is expected/imminent.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| 1 | Bounding overwatch techniques are utilized. |
|---|--|
| 2 | Overwatch sections/elements occupy overwatch position(s) and searches adjacent terrain. (KI) |
| 3 | Overwatch positions offer good fields of fire to cover bounding MCM section/element. |
| 4 | The platoon commander reports the crossing of control measures to the supported commander as specified. |
| 5 | Bounding section occupies subsequent overwatch positions, searches adjacent terrain, and verifies that it is secure. |
| 6 | Bounding section reports by either signal or radio that it is |

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: Evaluator may deploy aggressors against lead squads/elements; 90 percent rule applies.

KEY INDICATORS:

ACTION OF OVERWATCH SQUADS/ELEMENTS

Squads/Elements must:

- Vehicles occupy suitable positions and prepare to fire.
- Positions permit observation and fires upon the moving unit's axis and terrain which dominates that axis.
- Overwatch squad(s)/element engage detected enemy with all available direct fire weapons (within effective range).

TASK: 10D.03.10 CONDUCT TACTICAL HALT

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is required to halt while conducting a tactical
movement

| STANDARDS: EV | AL: Y; N; NE |
|---|--|
| | ith embarked personnel for area security, AAVs halt in a formation ppropriate to the terrain, time available, and |
| | he platoon commander establishes unit security immediately to nclude air watches. |
| .3 A | t halt, vehicle checks are conducted per unit SOP based on |
| .4 V | chicles are prepared to move out in prescribed order of |
| EVALUATOR INST | RUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATORS | : None. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10D.03. | 11 CONDUCT NIGHT MOVEMENT |
| country moveme adjacent unit situation and security. The utilized. The The MCM platoo | The MCM platoon has been ordered to provide support to an A cross nt at night is required to link up with the adjacent unit. The is located at a minimum distance of 5 miles. Due to the enemy tempo of operations, no infantry support is available for vehicle enemy situation requires that a bounding technique of movement be enemy has direct and indirect fire, air, and EW capabilities. In commander has been ordered to limit radio traffic to the num and use covered communications. |
| STANDARDS: EV | AL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 т | he platoon commander plans for the use of night vision |
| 1 | he platoon commander coordinates with the adjacent unit to specify ink up point, route, fire support plan, call signs and requencies, and recognition signals. |
| .3 T | he route selection minimizes AAV exposure to the enemy. |
| .4 т | he platoon commander determines the ambient light level. |
| | he platoon commander maintains effective command and control over he formation during night operations. |
| | he platoon commander and section leaders can navigate using the lobal Positioning System (GPS). |
| | he AAVs navigate the planned route and reaches link-up point ithin prescribed time. |
| | he platoon commander plans primary and alternate means of ommunications to ensure effective command and control. |
| | he platoon has plans for evasive maneuvers that are easily |

- Assignment.

| .10 The platoon employs navigation aids, such as the GAIL lighting system, chemical lights, GPS, etc., to aid in | | | | |
|--|--|--|--|--|
| .11 The platoon commander plans for and employs a quartering | | | | |
| <u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u> : None. | | | | |
| <u>KEY INDICATORS</u> : None. | | | | |
| TASK: 10D.03.12 CONDUCT AAV GUNNERY OPERATIONS | | | | |
| $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The MCM platoon is providing .50 cal and 40mm fire support hasty positions. Enemy forces are located from ranges of 200 meters to 1500 meters. The targets vary from enemy troops in trench lines and bunkers to armored vehicles. | | | | |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE | | | | |
| .1 Section leaders demonstrate the ability to identify targets and direct effective fire on target using the appropriate | | | | |
| .2 Crewmen demonstrate the ability to hit the targets they are | | | | |
| .3 Section leaders demonstrate the six basic elements of fire | | | | |
| .4 AAV guncrews perform reconnaissance by fire, suppressive fire, engagement of point and area targets, and multiple | | | | |
| .5 50 cal. barrels are changed approximately every 1000 rounds if breaks in action make it feasible. | | | | |
| .6 While firing on the move, crewmen demonstrate the ability to hit ar area target. | | | | |
| .7 Crewmen demonstrate proper actions during weapon failures. | | | | |
| .8 AAV unit reports SITREP to higher headquarters. | | | | |
| <u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u> : The evaluator should be in a position where he can monitor fire command as well as view the targets. Binoculars are required. All crews should be evaluated with the 90 percent rule applying. | | | | |
| KEY INDICATORS: | | | | |
| ELEMENTS OF A FIRE COMMAND | | | | |
| The elements include: | | | | |
| - Alert. | | | | |
| - Direction. | | | | |
| - Description. | | | | |

- Control.

TECHNIQUES OF FIRE

These include:

- a. RECONNAISSANCE BY FIRE: Fire single burst with the goal of drawing return fire from the enemy.
- b. SUPPRESSIVE FIRE: Direct fire designed to inflict damage and casualties at known or suspected enemy positions. Fired in bursts of 10-15 rounds every 10 seconds.
- c. POINT TARGET: A target covering a small area that can be hit by one or two bursts of 10-15 rounds. Should be engaged from short halts.
- d. AREA TARGET: Normally covers a wide area. Use of the "z" pattern is most effective.
- e. MULTIPLE TARGETS: Suppressive fire is utilized. Multiple targets are engaged by different sections within the platoon(s). The targets providing the most immediate threat are engaged first.

TASK: 10D.03.13 ESTABLISH DEFENSIVE POSITIONS

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The MCM platoon has been ordered to conduct defensive support of an infantry unit while on a night halt.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The platoon commander acknowledges receipt of the supported unit's $\ensuremath{\text{OpOrd}/\text{FRAG}}$ Order. |
|-----|---|
| .2 | Platoon leaders conduct a reconnaissance of the assigned defensive positions. |
| .3 | AAVs move to the initial defensive positions utilizing movement techniques appropriate to the threat, visibility, and |
| .4 | The platoon commander coordinates with the supported unit and ensures vehicle security is provided. |
| .5 | The platoon commander coordinates sectors of fire and the general location of vehicle fighting positions. |
| .6 | AAV crews occupy vehicle fighting positions. |
| .7 | AAV crews prepare range cards. |
| .8 | Section leaders prepare fire plan sketches. |
| .9 | The platoon commander determines the need for camouflage |
| .10 | Crews make efforts to cover "track prints" around positions. |

| .11 | MCM platoon lays communications wire, if time permits. |
|-----|---|
| .12 | The platoon commander coordinates with the supported unit to select alternate and supplementary positions, covered and concealed routes between fighting positions, and rehearses |
| .13 | Crewmen utilize night vision devices. |
| .14 | The platoon is prepared to move to counterattack position, |
| .15 | Platoon rehearses counter-attack if situation permits. |
| .16 | Platoon rehearses movement back to subsequent battle position if in a mobile defense. |
| .17 | Platoon conducts reconnaissance of subsequent battle positions, if applicable. |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

MCM PLATOON COMMANDER RESPONSIBILITIES

The MCM platoon commander designates sectors of fires to maximize the effectiveness of the unit's weapons. These sectors are submitted to higher headquarters for inclusion in the overall defensive overlay. He places special emphasis on the following:

.18 ____ Crew chiefs constantly improving vehicle position.

- Proper utilization of terrain.
- Covered and concealed positions.
- Camouflage techniques.
- Control of key terrain.
- Defense in depth with mutually supporting fires.
- Good observation and fields of fire.
- Designated target reference points (TRPs), engagement areas, boundaries, and armor kill zones (AKZs).
 - Cover for likely fields of approach.
 - Long range and flanking fires.
 - Supplemental positions.
 - Coordination with adjacent units.
 - Plans for close and midrange fires.
 - Plan for withdrawal.

- Designated priority of work.
- Assignment of target priorities.
- Construct/coordinates emplacement of obstacles.

TASK: 10D.03.14 EMPLOYMENT OF AAV WEAPONS IN THE DEFENSE

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The MCM platoon is providing .50 cal, 40mm, and small arms from defensive positions at night. Enemy forces are located from ranges of 200 meters to 1500 meters. The targets vary from troops in trench lines and bunkers to armored vehicles.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The platoon | sergeant | ensures | distribution | of | night | vision | devices |
|----|--------------|----------|---------|--------------|----|-------|--------|---------|
| | to crew chie | efs. | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |

.2 ____ Crew chief checks foresight of the vehicles weapons station.

| 3 | Crow | chiafa | maka | appropriate | range | aarda | /KT |
|---|------|---------|------|-------------|-------|--------|------|
| | CICW | CITTCIB | manc | appropriace | Lange | carab. | (1/1 |

.4 ____ Section leaders make fire plan sketches.

| .5 | Based | on | the | rar | ige (| card, | cre | ewmen | demonstr | cate | the | abil | ity | to | hit | а |
|----|-------|-----|------|-----|-------|--------|-----|-------|----------|------|-----|------|-----|-----|------|-----|
| | point | tar | get | at | 150 | 0 mete | ers | while | firing | thi | cty | (30) | .50 | cal | rour | ıds |
| | in th | cee | burs | sts | at i | night | | | | | | | | | | |

.6 $_$ Based on range cards, AAV crewman demonstrate the ability to employ 40mm grenade launcher against suitable targets.

.7 $_$ AAV organic firepower assets are employed per control measures in effect at the time of engagement. (KI)

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: Pyrotechnics are fired to provide ambient light to ensure the target is being hit if NVGs are not available of utilized.

KEY INDICATORS:

CONTROL MEASURES

Published by the senior headquarters or supported unit and should include:

- Target reference point.
- Engagement areas/armor kill zones.
- Sectors and limits of fire.
- Unit boundaries.
- Target priorities for each weapon system.

RANGE CARDS

The four essential parts of a range card are:

- Target identification.
- Azimuth.
- Range.
- Elevation.

TASK: 10D.03.15 EMPLOYMENT OF SMOKE SCREEN

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is supporting embarked infantry personnel.

have engaged the element. The employment of smoke has been briefed prior to the commencement of operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Lays down a smoke screen.
- .2 ____ AAV crews correctly load and fire the M-257 Smoke Grenade
- .3 $_$ AAV crews demonstrate immediate action on the M-257 Smoke Grenade Launcher. (KI)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

IMMEDIATE ACTION

If the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher does not fire on the first attempt, immediate action procedures are as follows:

- Shut down electrical power in the turret.
- Ensure grenade is properly seated.
- -- If properly seated, attempt to fire, remove the grenade, place it in another tube and attempt to fire. If it still does not fire, then stow the round to turn in later to EOD personnel for disposal.
- -- If the grenade is not properly seated, then reset and attempt to fire. If grenade still does not fire, change tubes and follow procedures as described above.

MPS 10D.04 - SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

TASK: 10D.04.01 CONDUCT RECOVERY OPERATIONS

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The MCM platoon is in direct support. An AAV has become a casualty and must be recovered.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | Immediate actions are taken to extract personnel and/or extinguish fires, consistent with the tactical situation. |
|-----|--|
| .2 | Medvac sitreps are to be sent to higher headquarters. |
| .3 | The crew of disabled AAV, with platoon maintenance chief, conducts battle damage assessment and makes repairs if |
| . 4 | The platoon sergeant requests a recovery vehicle through the supported or parent unit. |
| .5 | The platoon sergeant coordinates recovery effort with the supported unit including the location of, and route to, the |
| .6 | Disabled vehicle(s) and/or equipment is successfully |
| .7 | NBC contaminated equipment is recovered/evacuated. (KI) |
| .8 | The platoon commander requests replacement vehicle if |
| .9 | Crewmen use approved methods of AAV destruction to prevent the enemy use of vehicle if it cannot be salvaged or recovered. |

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with the TEC, inserts sufficient vehicle casualty play into the tactical scenario to evaluate this task including simulated destruction of AAV.

KEY INDICATORS:

RECOVERY COORDINATION

The recovery effort includes:

- Coordination with the supported unit to ensure familiarization with the situation and tactical control measures in effect.
 - Identifying location and a route to vehicle/equipment.
 - Locating vehicle/equipment without excessive searching.
 - Ensuring security augmentation, if tactically required.

NBC contaminated recovery operations have the following additional requirements:

- Crews adopt MOPP 4 and button up recovery vehicle before entering contaminated area.

- Select route that minimizes exposure.
- Enforce all safety regulations.
- Rig for evacuation.
- Recover vehicle/equipment and evacuate it to the EDS.
- Assist EDS personnel in decontaminating the recovery vehicle.
- Evacuate to the appropriate maintenance/support activity.

TASK: 10D.04.02 CONDUCT SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The MCM platoon is tasked to support tactical operations and/or on land. Initial planning has been completed, as well as liaison with the supported and/or parent unit. Final preparations for supportability have been completed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The MCM platoon commander and/or AAV parent unit maintenance and supply officers provide input into the logistics. |
|-----|--|
| .2 | AAV crews conduct timely crew maintenance (third echelon maintenance and below, prior to deployment). |
| .3 | Supply and maintenance responsibilities are clearly understood by the platoon commander and the supported unit commander. |
| .4 | AAV crews are trained in all the operation, preventative maintenance, and lubrication tasks related to their vehicle. |
| .5 | Trained maintenance personnel from the parent company are attached to the platoon and are located well forward and readily available to the AAV unit. (KI) |
| .6 | The platoon carries an operational block of repair parts while deployed, to include PEB, extended maintenance materials, and disposable items for all organic equipment. |
| . 7 | Preventative maintenance "spot check" inspections are conducted on |

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with TEC, inserts sufficient logistic and maintenance requirements into the tactical scenario to provide for evaluation of this task.

a routine basis, and a continuing service program

KEY INDICATORS:

ORGANIZATIONAL MAINTENANCE

Ensure organizational maintenance is organized to accomplish the following:

- Make repairs as far forward as possible.
- Identify and record precise discrepancies of the vehicles and equipment to include specific parts and actions required.
- $\mbox{-}$ Provide necessary personnel, parts, tools, and equipment to affect repairs.
 - Repair and return vehicles and equipment to the unit in a timely manner.

MPS 10D.05 - CONTINUING ACTIONS BY MARINES

TASK: 10D.05.01 IMPLEMENTING DISCIPLINE

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The MCM platoon is tasked to support the tactical combat element. Operations can be waterborne, ashore, or both. The platoon is equipped for both day and night operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE .1 ____ Collective discipline is demonstrated by individual members being in control of themselves and contributing to $\ensuremath{\mathsf{mission}}$.2 ____ Platoon personnel safeguard and clean their weapons, both individual and crew served, daily. .3 ____ Platoon vehicles, generators, etc., are given regular operator maintenance by the Marine(s) assigned to operate them. _ Log books are filled out including operating entries and _ The platoon employs its' firepower in an orderly and organized fashion when engaged. Random wastage of ammunition is not .6 ____ Marines do not waste or abuse unit supplies or material. .7 ____ Supplies are safeguarded from the enemy and from the weather, and are not scattered about. .8 ____ Marines operating radios do not expose themselves to radio detection finding (RDF) by unnecessary, wordy, or repetitious message traffic. Standard passwords are used and communication checks are limited. All personnel using radios adhere to required standards of performance regardless of grade. .9 ____ Unit cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor noise discipline, particularly during halts. _ Unit cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor light Marines wear/carry the prescribed uniform/equipment at all times including individual weapon, body armor, helmets, protective mask, first aid kit, safety boots, and NOMEX

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: If a unit is located by RDF or observation as a result of noise, light, and/or communications procedures, the standard cannot be considered as having been met. Evaluators must determine if the unit is violating light, noise, and communication procedures discipline when no aggressors or EW support is available from the TEC. This task will be evaluated over the entire exercise and evaluators will note efforts of unit leaders to maintain and correct discipline. Improvement by the unit throughout the

police of area, and inspection of the

.12 ____ Leaders actively promote field sanitation and personal hygiene by

enforcing use of designated heads, good personal health habits,

exercise, such as standards become consistently met, may result in a "yes" marking.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 10D.05.02 CONDUCT PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM)

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The MCM platoon is supporting tactical operations. The limited duration; however, the MCM platoon is supporting both the ship to objective movement and land operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The platoon | commander | includes | preventative | maintenance | time | during |
|----|-------------|-----------|----------|--------------|-------------|------|--------|
| | operational | planning. | | | | | |

- .2 ____ Vehicle crew chiefs assign crewman areas of responsibility for PM and supervise their efforts.
- .3 ____ Crewmen display a sense of urgency when conducting PMs.
- .4 ____ Preoperation, during operation, and post operation checks are
- .5 ____ Proper startup procedures are followed.
- .6 ____ During scheduled/nonscheduled halts, PM checks are performed.
- 7 ____ Proper cool down procedures are followed before shutting down.
- .8 ____ Additional equipment, including weapons, receive continuous maintenance by crewmen.
- .9 ____ Safety rules and regulations are followed per unit SOP.
- .10 ____ Crewmen conduct PM on communications equipment.
- .11 ____ Maintenance personnel aggressively coordinate with crew chiefs to identify corrective maintenance needs.

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: This task is applicable at all times. Evaluators must be familiar with proper first echelon maintenance and lubrication procedures.

KEY INDICATORS:

HALT CHECKS

Halt check are scheduled to occur during all long movements. Anytime the platoon makes unscheduled halts, PM checks are made. During short halts, a walk around inspection is made to check the hull and suspension components. Longer halts include engine compartment/fluid level checks.

TASK: 10D.05.03 DEMONSTRATE DISPERSION

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The MCM platoon is tasked to provide direct support to a ground element. The tactical situation requires both offensive and defensive actions to

| to occur. |
|---|
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 AAVs/personnel maintain dispersion during movement, and in particular, do not bunch together at the conclusion of an |
| .2 AAVs maintain assigned positions and intervals during |
| .3 All platoon vehicles maintain dispersion during halts, in assembly areas, and when deployed in the defense. |
| .4 Leaders set the example by personally heeding the rule of dispersion and, at the same time, take immediate action to |
| <u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u> : None. |
| <u>KEY INDICATORS</u> : None. |
| TASK: 10D.05.04 EMPLOY COVER AND CONCEALMENT |
| $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The MCM platoon is tasked to provide direct support of a ground element. The tactical situation requires both offensive and defensive actions to occur. |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE |

S'

| .1 | Individual Marine demonstrate attention to detail when camouflaging platoon vehicles and equipment to include |
|-----|--|
| .2 | When halted for extended periods, vehicles are camouflaged with reflective surfaces dulled. |
| .3 | Equipment and tentage are provided with appropriate netting or are concealed with natural material. |
| . 4 | The platoon's leaders stress placement of men and material in areas that provide cover and concealment from casual detection by enemy air and ground assets. Use of shadow areas for hasty |
| .5 | Covered positions allow for adequate observation and fields of |
| .6 | Crew members correctly generate vehicle smoke for screening if required by the tactical commander. |
| .7 | The platoon selects and prepares a position that offers the best camouflage and cover. |

 $\underline{\text{EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS}} \colon \quad \text{Evaluator observes individual Marines and the platoon.}$ This task is applicable throughout the operation.

KEY INDICATORS:

COVERED POSITION

Ensure that covered firing positions satisfy the following requirements:

- $\,$ Position allows the best possible observation and fields of fire consistent with the terrain and tactical situation.
- Weapons mounted on the vehicle can cover the assigned targets/engagement areas.
- Vehicle's hull is protected from direct fire from the front.

TASK: 10D.05.05 REACT TO DIRECT FIRES

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The MCM platoon is moving and is engaged by enemy vehicles/armored personnel carriers, antitank gun, ATGM, or small arms.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 ____ Crewmen button up.

| .1 | The MCM platoon returns fire immediately, if in range. |
|---------------------------|---|
| .2 | The platoon employs smoke to obscure the enemy's observation and to screen the movement of AAVs, if tactically appropriate. |
| .3 | The AAVs initiate evasive action and use available terrain features/dispersion. |
| .4 | The platoon employs all available direct fire weapons to suppress the enemy. |
| .5 | The platoon commander requests immediate fire support from mortars, artillery, NSFS, and/or aircraft, if available. |
| .6 | Spot reports are submitted to the supported unit headquarters. |
| .7 | The platoon commander continues to develop the situation. |
| EVALUATOR IN mortar, is r | STRUCTIONS: A simulated or actual request for fire, artillery or equired. |
| KEY INDICATO | RS: None. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10D.0 | 5.06 REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE |
| CONDITION(S) | : The MCM platoon is moving and comes under indirect fire source. |

ENCLOSURE (1)

.2 ____ AAVs move through the impact area and continue the mission.

| .3 | The platoon employs smoke to obscure enemy's observation and to screen the movement of AAVs, if tactically appropriate. |
|---------------------|--|
| .4 | The platoon commander ensures dispersion and uses evasive maneuvers to maximize use of available covering terrain. |
| .5 | When under "automatic masking" directives, crews don protective mask, initiate NBC monitor/survey, and submit NBC-1 |
| .6 | The platoon submits a Spot report and SHELLREP to the supported unit as appropriate. |
| EVALUATOR IN | ISTRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATO | ORS: None. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10D.0 | 5.07 ESTABLISH TACTICAL RADIO COMMUNICATION |
| | : The MCM platoon is in direct support of tactical operations order MCM platoon to operate covered circuits. |
| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | Demonstrates the ability to install and operate COMSEC |
| .2 | Demonstrates the ability to use KY device AN/CZY-10 for FH and |
| .3 | Demonstrates the ability to use authentication tables. |
| .4 | AAV crews understand and demonstrate "beadwindow" procedures. |
| .5 | Crew chiefs and section leaders are able to explain the capabilities of the vehicle communications system in the |
| .6 | Demonstrates radio discipline by keeping conversations short and radio checks to a minimum. |
| .7 | Crewmen realize and demonstrate the importance of low power radio settings for short distance communications. |
| .8 | Reports inoperable communications equipment in a timely |
| .9 | Demonstrates the ability to pass information by alternate |
| .10 | Communications personnel organic to the platoon demonstrate the ability to employ all types of organic antennas and field expedient antennas, when required. |
| .11 | Platoon personnel demonstrate the ability to perform a late |
| .12 | Platoon personnel demonstrate the ability to perform a Hot |
| .13 | Platoon personnel demonstrate the ability to transfer SOI, COMSEC, FH data/Sync time from ANCD to ANCD (supported units to platoon). |

| .14 Platoon personnel demonstrate the ability to load time and date from PLGR to ANCD and PLGR to RT. |
|--|
| EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATORS: None. |
| TASK: 10D.05.08 RESPOND TO ENEMY ELECTRONIC WARFARE (EW) |
| CONDITION(S): Enemy forces have the capability to conduct ESM and ECM radio spectrum, initiative deception and frequency jamming are being used. Numerous items of friendly communications equipment are known to be in the hands of the enemy, and they are familiar with our communication techniques and procedures. Enemy antennas are located well forward. |
| STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 All radio nets specified as covered circuits in the CEOI plan operate in the covered mode. |
| .2 CEOI is followed; daily changing frequencies and call signs |
| .3 Operators adhere to emission control (EMCON) procedures. |
| .4 Vehicle commanders choose sites that provide for terrain masking to minimize enemy probability of communication |
| .5 Authentication is required by Marines guarding uncovered radio |
| .6 Marines operating radios do not reveal effectiveness of enemy jamming efforts and continue to attempt to communicate. |
| .7 Proven or suspected enemy electronic activity is reported to the supported unit by a "MIJI" report via wire, messenger, or other secure means in a timely manner. |
| .8 Relays communications by alternate means when radio nets are effectively jammed. |
| .9 Radio operators do not compromise unit locations, strength, or commit other "BEADWINDOW" security violations. |
| .10 Expedient radio antennas are employed, when feasible. |
| .11 Low priority and routine messages are sent by other than |
| .12 Transmitting power is set at the minimum required to |
| .13 Brevity codes promulgated by the appropriate communications SOP are employed. |
| EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None. |
| <u>KEY INDICATORS</u> : None. |

TASK: 10D.05.09 RESPOND TO ENEMY AIR THREAT

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The enemy has fixed wing and attack helicopter capability. Their all weather capability is limited. Laser guided munitions are available to the enemy.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The AAV unit has established procedures for both active and passive air defense. |
|-----|---|
| .2 | Air guards are designated. (KI) |
| .3 | The platoon has an alarm system to warn of air attack. |
| .4 | Planned procedures are used to alert all personnel on board the AAVs to air attack. |
| .5 | Crewmen are aware of, and react to, the meaning of the alarm. |
| .6 | The platoon's maneuver elements continue to maneuver, relying on overwatch elements and air defense elements to engage |
| .7 | If given advance warning of approaching hostile aircraft, the platoon takes appropriate passive measures. (KI) |
| .8 | If the platoon is taken by surprise by hostile aircraft, the AAVs take appropriate active defensive actions. (KI) |
| .9 | The platoon commander maintains fire control and causes the delivery of a heavy volume of fire at the attacking aircraft. |
| .10 | The platoon reports attack by enemy air to the supported unit by flash message. |

KEY INDICATORS:

AIR GUARDS

Air guards are specifically assigned within each subordinate element designated to watch for the approach of hostile aircraft. Moving units increase the number of air guards, and specify sectors to cover 360 degrees of observation. They are able to:

- State the nature of the threat; i.e., fixed-wing jet.
- Use the signal established as the alarm for attack.
- Identify friendly aircraft that are in support of the unit.

PASSIVE DEFENSE AGAINST ENEMY AIRCRAFT

If adequate advance warning alerts the MCM platoon to incoming enemy aircraft, whether it be fixed-wing or helicopter, the following passive measures should be taken:

- Slow movement down to reduce dust signature if on the move.
- Use covered and concealed firing positions; take up positions beside hill masses that will mask the vehicles and limit the approach angle of the aircraft.
 - Assign sectors of fire.

ACTIVE DEFENSE AGAINST ENEMY AIRCRAFT

Once the MCM platoon has taken up a passive antiair posture, there is a possibility that enemy aircraft, especially fixed-wing, will not see the AAV unit and will bypass it. If so, the MCM platoon should stay in place until the aircraft are safely out of range then continue on with the mission. If the enemy air detects the MCM platoon, or the unit is ordered to engage the aircraft, the following steps are taken:

- On order, AAVs and embarked Marines engage the aircraft with onboard weapons systems.
- Maneuver to provide the most difficult target to the aircraft, i.e., if in a column turn at a right angle to approaching aircraft.
- $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Employ}}$ smoke to screen the force and move to preplanned secondary positions.

TASK: 10D.05.10 PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: The MCM platoon is moving in a rear area without embarked and uncovers enemy soldiers attempting to emplace a mine. The enemy is captured with both the explosive device and documents.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The platoon processes EPWs per the Marine Corps Battle Skills Test (MBST) Manual. (KI) |
|-----|---|
| .2 | Perishable information obtained from EPWs is reported to higher headquarters by most expeditious means. |
| .3 | Marines handling wounded or sick EPWs ensure they receive proper medical care. |
| . 4 | EPWs are allowed to retain personal protective equipment (e.g., helmet, gas mask, etc.). |
| .5 | EPWs and all recovered equipment/documents are transferred to higher headquarters as soon as possible. |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

EPW PROCESSING

EPWs should be processed in accordance with the following:

- Individual Marine handling EPWs segregate them by type: Officers, NCOs, unranked, civilian combatants, sex, etc.
- ${\tt EPWs}$ are searched immediately after capture: material found is tagged per the ${\tt EPW}$ from whom it was taken.
- EPWs are required to remain silent and are not permitted to converse among themselves.
 - EPWs are processed with speed to obtain maximum intelligence benefit.
- $\,$ Marines handling EPWs ensure that they are safeguarded from abuse and from hazards of enemy fire.

TASK: 10D.05.11 PROCESS CASUALTY EVACUATIONS

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The MCM platoon is in support and has been tasked with to provide for a waterborne means of evacuating casualties. Organic corpsmen are with the platoon.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The MCM platoon briefs its MEDEVAC capabilities to the |
|----|--|
| .2 | The MCM platoon understands the supported unit's MEDEVAC procedures, priorities, and required reports. |
| .3 | AAV litter kits are properly installed and serviceable. |
| .4 | Marine dealing with casualties prior to arrival of corpsmen demonstrate emergency first aid knowledge in the treatment for shock, fractures, penetrating wounds, and sucking chest |
| .5 | Lightly wounded Marines apply self aid. |
| .6 | Marines dealing with casualties are familiar with evacuation procedures, locations of medical facilities, and safe routes |
| .7 | Marines who must be evacuated are transported to the treatment site in a tactically sound and expeditious manner with adequate on board medical assistance. |
| .8 | Casualty reporting begins immediately through the chain of |
| .9 | Wounded Marines' equipment is handled per AAV unit SOP. |

KEY INDICATORS:

CHAIN OF EVACUATION

AAV crewman should be aware of all possible means to MEDEVAC personnel. Location of aid stations should be noted in operations orders. Each MCM platoon should have a corpsman assigned to assist in medical treatment and evacuation.

TASK: 10D.05.12 IMPLEMENTING AAV OPERATIONAL SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION(S)}}$: The MCM platoon is in support of day/night tactical the sea and on land.

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
|------------|---|
| .1 | A safety brief is conducted prior to water operations. |
| .2 | All embarked personnel must wear helmets and carry weapons with muzzles down. (KI) |
| .3 | All personnel wear inflatable preserves with serviceable CO2 cartridges during water operations. |
| .4 | Safety belts are not worn while the vehicle is waterborne. |
| .5 | Embarked personnel wear normal combat equipment over a life preserver and loose enough to jettison without delay. |
| .6 | Embarked personnel are provided an individual vision light during night operations that is attached to the life |
| .7 | Personnel are restricted from riding on top of a moving AAV. |
| .8 | Personnel do not ride in a moving AAV with more than their heads and shoulders extending above the hatch. |
| .9 | No smoking is allowed. |
| .10 | AAVs maintain a distance of at least 10 meters during periods of unrestricted visibility, or less during periods of restricted visibility while waterborne. |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

<u>HELMETS</u>

.11 ___ An AAV crewmember positions himself at the aft personnel door to

ensure the door is secure during all waterborne

All personnel manning AAVs wear helmets. Crewmembers normally wear communication helmets while passengers wear the Kevlar issue helmet and carry weapons with muzzles down.

All personnel wear the inflatable type life preserver at all times during water operations. AAV unit provides life preservers for crewmen and embarked personnel. Inflatable type life jackets will be worn around the neck and under equipment while vehicles are waterborne, and not contained in the carrying case at the belt.

MPS 10D.06 - PREPARE FOR NBC OPERATIONS

TASK: 10D.06.01 NBC OPERATIONS

 $\frac{\texttt{CONDITION(S)}}{\texttt{CONDITION(S)}}: \quad \texttt{Threat forces have employed NBC munitions in the area destroying/disrupting operations and facilities.} \quad \texttt{Due to the threat, passive and active defense measures must be used for survival of the MCM platoon.}$

| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE | |
|--|---|--|
| .1 | The MCM platoon possesses the unit's SOP which outlines procedures for enemy NBC strikes and the reports required. | |
| .2 | All individual NBC defense equipment authorized by the table of equipment (T/E) is issued to each individual. | |
| .3 | All unit NBC defense equipment authorized by ${\tt T/E}$ is operationally ready and distributed to trained operators. | |
| .4 | NBC equipment shortages are identified and replacement actions | |
| .5 | M11 decontamination equipment units are filled (water used for | |
| .6 | MOPP level is established by the supported unit and AAV personnel are at or above required MOPP level. | |
| .7 | The platoon commander uses the IM-143 or the AN/PDR-75 radiac detector and reports the readings higher headquarters. | |
| .8 | The platoon's leaders understand MOPP levels for the control of exposure of personnel to chemical hazards. | |
| .9 | Marines properly identify NATO or threat NBC contamination | |
| .10 | All elements of the platoon maximize the utilization of terrain features for cover, concealment, and topographic | |
| EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Provide the platoon information to expect an imminent NBC attack by the enemy and integrate NBC scenarios with normal missions. Evaluator(s) should be school trained in the area of NBC defense (MOS 57XX) or be thoroughly trained in this area as part of evaluators' school. | | |
| <u>KEY INDICATORS</u> : None. | | |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10D.0 | 6.02 PREPARE FOR NUCLEAR ATTACK | |
| CONDITION(S) theater of o | : The MCM platoon commander is informed that nuclear weapons in the perations. | |
| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE | |
| .1 | Backup command, control and communication procedures are used | |
| .2 | Subordinate/Displaced elements are alerted, if applicable. | |

| .3 | The platoon continues the mission while implemention actions to minimize casualties and damage. |
|---------------------|--|
| .4 | The platoon implements protective measures, as directed by higher command element, consistent with the mission. |
| .5 | Personnel minimize exposure by rolling down sleeves, buttoning collars, and wearing additional clothing equal to a two |
| .6 | Personnel take cover in fighting holes, armored vehicles, existing shelters (basements, culverts, caves, tunnels, etc.), or lie prone on the ground, as dictated by the time of the |
| .7 | External electronic equipment is protected from ElectroMagnetic Pulse (EMP) and Transient Radiation Effects on |
| .8 | Periodic monitoring is initiated, using the IM-174 radiac detector or the $\Delta N/VDR-2$ radiac set. |
| .9 | Vehicles are placed behind masking terrain. |
| .10 | All loose items, flammable/explosive items, food and water, which are not stored in AAVs, are secured and protected from |
| .11 | Platoon personnel use standard first aid procedures to provide self/buddy aid for nuclear blast and thermal effects. |
| EVALUATOR IN | STRUCTIONS: None. |
| KEY INDICATO | RS: None. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10D.0 | 6.03 RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK |
| CONDITION(S) | : Nuclear burst has occurred or is imminent. |
| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | Upon recognizing the attack, all personnel take immediate action to shield themselves from blast/heat of detonation. |
| .2 | Chain of command and communication are maintained or reestablished. AAV resume mission, if possible. |
| .3 | NBC-1 initial and follow-up reports, as required, are rapidly submitted to the supported command element by personnel designated or responsible for collecting the information. Reliable and complete reports are rapidly forwarded, by secure |
| . 4 | Casualties are given first aid and are evacuated to a medical treatment station as the mission permits; fatalities are evacuated to a graves registration collection point. |
| .5 | Damage assessment is submitted by secure means to the supported headquarters per SOP. |

.6 ____ Continuous monitoring is initiated, using the IM-174 radiac detector or the AN/VDR-2 radiac set.

<u>EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS</u>: a. The evaluator announces that a nuclear blast either has occurred at a given location, or that a blast is imminent. A blast simulator can initiate platoon action/evaluation when the commander has been informed of the pending nuclear attack.

b. Evaluators will asses constructive casualties due to the blast, heat, radiation, and ElectroMagnetic Pulse (EMP). EMP casualties will be assessed by the evaluator for all communications systems (antennas, receivers/transmitters) that are exposed (not in a covered or hardened location/vehicle) during the simulated nuclear detonation

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 10D.06.04 RESPOND TO RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR BLAST

CONDITION(S): A surface or subsurface nuclear detonation has occurred. The MCM platoon's location is within the predicted fallout zone. An M5A2 radiological fallout predictor, or substitute, is available. The platoon gets effective downwind messages at least once every three hours. NBC-2 report is furnished to the unit about 15 minutes after the detonation, or prepared by the unit; NBC-3 report is furnished to the unit about 15 minutes after the detonation, or prepared by the unit; NBC-3 report is furnished about 45 minutes after the detonation; NBC-5 report and/or contamination overlay is provided about four hours after the detonation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The platoon's mission is performed concurrently with all other |
|-----|---|
| .2 | The platoon is advised of estimated time of fallout arrival and subordinate elements are notified. |
| .3 | Continuous monitoring is maintained using the IM-174 detector or an $\Delta N/VDR-2$ radiac set. |
| .4 | Equipment, munitions, POL, food, and water are protected from |
| .5 | Personnel take protective measures to minimize fallout |
| .6 | NBC-4 reports are forwarded, as required, to the supported command element by secure means. |
| .7 | Unit total dose information is measured using the IM-173, AN/PDR-75 and reported to the supported command element using available secure means. |
| .8 | Exposure is minimized while the command element determine if relocation to a clean area is necessary. |
| .9 | Personnel provide first aid treatment to casualties in a nuclear environment while minimizing selves and casualties to |
| .10 | Casualties and fatalities are assessed. |

.11 ____ Vehicles are assessed for damage.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Commander is advised of estimated time of fallout arrival.

KEY INDICATORS:

PERSONNEL PROTECTIVE MEASURES

Personnel take the following measures to minimize fallout effects:

- Place a wet cloth across mouth and nose.
- Make the AAV as air tight as possible.
- Utilize outer garments, such as ponchos, to the maximum extent possible.
- Keep the inside of the vehicle as clean as possible.

TASK: 10D.06.05 PERFORM RADIOLOGICAL DECONTAMINATION

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: Fallout has ceased, and personnel and equipment are hazard to personnel does not allow time for the radiation to decay to a minimum level. Time and tactical situation permits hasty decontamination. Decontamination support is not available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| .1 | The platoon commander establishes decontamination priorities. |
|-----|--|
| . 2 | A hasty decontamination point is established out of the |
| .3 | Movement to the decontaminated site is controlled and is |
| . 4 | Decontamination personnel wear appropriate protective clothing and equipment. |
| .5 | Hasty decontamination of equipment and vehicles using appropriate expedient devices occurs. (KI) |
| .6 | Contaminated areas are marked with NATO standard NBC markers. |
| .7 | Adequacy of decontamination is determined utilizing the |
| .8 | Contaminated materials are discarded according to tactical SOP, marked as contaminated, and location is provided to |
| .9 | Decontamination personnel are decontaminated as necessary. |
| .10 | Operational Exposure Guidance (OEG) is not exceeded. |
| .11 | Total dose information for the hasty decontamination area is recorded and reported utilizing the determined IM-174 and/or AN/VDR-2 to higher headquarters. |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

EXPEDIENT DECONTAMINATION

The rule of thumb for expedient decontamination is wet and dry on dry. If the contaminant is wet, utilized buckets of water or if possible, splash the AAVs into a body of water. If the contaminate is dry, simply brush it off the vehicles and personnel.

TASK: 10D.06.06 CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA **CONDITION(S):** The tactical situation forces the MCM platoon to cross a contaminated area. STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE _ The platoon's reconnaissance element is provided the turnback The reconnaissance element is dispatched to reconnoiter new __ The platoon crosses expected contaminated area while employing contamination avoidance techniques. .4 ____ Operational Exposure Guidance (OEG) is not exceeded. .5 ____ After clearing the contaminated area, the degree of personnel and equipment contamination is determined, using the Decontamination priorities are established and performed as _ The platoon commander records the unit dose information, using available IM-143s or AN/PDR-75s, and reports the results to EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator will provide the MCM platoon commander with turnback and dose rates, if higher headquarters does not provide it. KEY INDICATORS: None. TASK: 10D.06.07 PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon commander receives a friendly nuclear 21-40, pages 6-24 and 6-15. The platoon is within Minimum Safe Distance (MSD) 2 two 3. STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE .1 ____ The platoon commander applies the STRIKWARN to the situation map within 5 minutes after message receipt. .2 ____ Pertinent information regarding the planned detonation (time of burst, ground zero, fallout coverage, MSD, etc.) is available to

ENCLOSURE (1)

the platoon commander.

| .3 | Unit is advised of its' vulnerability to the burst (within MSD 1,2 or 3) and residual contamination (within predicted fallout |
|---------------------|--|
| .4 | Unit is advised of the measures needed to prevent casualties, damage, and extended interference with the mission. |
| .5 | Unit implements protective measures, as directed by higher headquarters, consistent with the mission. |
| .6 | All platoon personnel minimize exposure by rolling down sleeves, buttoning collars, and wearing additional clothing |
| .7 | Personnel take cover in fighting holes, bunkers, armored vehicles, existing shelters (basements, culverts, caves, tunnels, etc.), or lie prone on open ground, as the time of |
| .8 | Vehicles are placed behind masking terrain. |
| .9 | External electronic equipment is protected from ElectroMagnetic Pulse (EMP) and Transient Radiation Effects on |
| .10 | All loose items (small weapons, tools, etc.) and highly flammable/explosive items (POL, propellants, etc.) are placed in armored vehicles or shelters. |
| .11 | The platoon commander acknowledges the warning before the expected time of burst. All platoon elements have been warned and protective measures implemented. |
| artillery bl | STRUCTIONS: Evaluator simulates nuclear detonation with an ast simulator, or informs the unit that nuclear blast has occurred. sesses casualties and damage to unprotected personnel and equipment. RS: None. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10D.0 | 6.08 PREPARE FOR CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK |
| | : An MCM platoon in support is informed that chemical used in the perations and that a chemical attack is imminent. |
| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | The platoon's leaders have and use it's parent organization's chemical defense SOP which addresses chemical |
| .2 | All platoon elements, if applicable, are directed to increase MOPP consistent with mission, temperature, work rate, and |
| .3 | Mission essential tasks that are difficult to perform in MOPP 4 are identified. Alternate methods of task performance, such as allowing more time, rotating or assigning additional |
| .4 | Marines perform up to standard in donning the protective mask and chemical protective overgarment |
| ENCLOSURE (1 |) |

| .5 | The buddy system is established to facilitate monitoring/treatment for chemical agent poisoning and |
|---------------------|---|
| .6 | The platoon continues its primary mission while implementing all actions to minimize NBC casualties and damage. |
| .7 | Portions of essential equipment, munitions, POL, food, and water supplies that cannot be placed in a shelter are covered with expendable or readily decontaminated tarps, shelter |
| .8 | Detector paper is affixed to visible, horizontal surfaces of protective clothing and on equipment, munitions, etc. |
| .9 | Decontamination is checked to ensure the M11 is filled, individuals have complete M13, M258A1, and M280 kits, and there is an available water source with a supporting road |
| .10 | Potential decontamination sites are reported to higher |
| .11 | Available chemical agent alarms are set up and monitored. |
| .12 | Protective NBC equipment and supplies are properly used and maintained in a high state of serviceability. |
| .13 | Marines demonstrate a knowledge of chemical agent symptoms. |
| .14 | Radio operators pass and receive alert/warning messages via headset while wearing the protective mask. |
| | STRUCTIONS: CO/OIC is informed that chemical weapons have been used er of operations and that an NBC attack is imminent. |
| KEY INDICATO | RS: None. |
| <u>TASK</u> : 10D.0 | 6.09 RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK |
| CONDITION(S) | : An MCM platoon in support is subjected to a chemical agent |
| STANDARDS: | EVAL: Y; N; NE |
| .1 | Platoon personnel identify the chemical alarm and take immediate protective measures. |
| .2 | Personnel automatically mask upon notification that the enemy has used chemical weapons, or upon perceiving a suspicious odor, airborne droplets/mist, or smoke from an unknown source. |
| .3 | Marines do not unmask until given the command "UNMASK" by their immediate commander. (KI) |
| .4 | The MCM platoon continues its primary mission for at least four hours while in MOPP 4. |
| | |

| .5 | Type of chemical agent is identified utilizing the M256 kit or M8 paper, and reported to the supported unit. |
|-----|--|
| .6 | Contamination is located and marked with NATO standard |
| .7 | Location and type of contamination is reported to the supported command element. |
| .8 | The platoon commander determines if immediate relocation to a clear area is necessary or possible and informs the supported |
| .9 | Priorities are determined for decontamination. Decontamination support is requested by the platoon commander, |
| .10 | WIAs are decontaminated, or wrapped, and marked as contaminated if decontamination is not performed, and evacuated. Medical treatment facility is alerted. |
| .11 | KIAs are wrapped, marked as contaminated, and evacuated as mission permits. Graves registration collection point is |
| .12 | Unmasking procedure is followed. |
| .13 | WIAs are evacuated to the medical treatment facility as |
| .14 | KIAs are evacuated to the graves registration collection point as mission permits. |
| .15 | Detector kits are serviced and returned to operation. |
| .16 | Expended chemical defense items are replaced as required. |
| .17 | The platoon commander adjusts MOPP level as required. |
| .18 | Unit personnel are able to handle and provide first aid treatment to casualties in a chemical environment. |

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Training site should support the type of activities being conducted and permit safe use of simulators and devices. Selected personnel are presented decontamination training kits and first aid treatment training devices to "treat designated casualties." Every attempt must be made to provide a realistic situation through devices, scenarios, or other aids developed through innovation. The key to a through evaluation is a realistic, believable, well supported situation imposed by the trainer/evaluator.

KEY INDICATORS: CHEMICAL CASUALTIES:

Chemical casualties are described as:

- Personnel without mask and hood within arms reach, without decontamination kits, or not wearing chemical protective clothing.
- Personnel not taking immediate corrective actions upon perceiving the attack, hearing a chemical agent alarm, being ordered to mask, or using incorrect masking procedures (not

masking within 9 seconds), or making incorrect use of decontamination kits/first aid treatment items.

- Marines who unmask or otherwise assume a lesser degrees of MOPP without being authorized to do so.

<u>UNMASKING PROCEDURES</u>:

The unmasking procedures outlined below are to be initiated after being notified to do so by higher headquarters or the immediate commander. They show procedures to be used with and without the M-256 chemical agent detector kit.

- 1. Initiate unmasking when a detector kit is available.
 - a. Disarm participants.
- b. Use the detector at different points in the parameter to determine the presence of chemical agents.
- c. If no agent is detected the senior Marine present will designate two or three individual Marines to unmask for 5 minutes and then remask for 10 minutes. This is to be done in the shade.
- d. If no symptoms appear, remainder of unit may unmask. However, they remain alert for symptoms.
- 2. When no detector kit is available, the following unmasking procedures will be adhered to:
 - a. Disarm participants.
- b. Two or three Marines take a deep breath, hold it, keep their eyes open, break the seal on their masks and hold the masks open for 15 seconds.
- c. With masks resealed and cleared, the Marines are checked for symptoms for next 10 minutes. This occurs in the shade.
 - d. If no symptoms appear, the same Marine

KEY INDICATORS:

CHEMICAL CASUALTIES

Chemical casualties are described as:

- Personnel without mask and hood within arms reach, without decontamination kits, or not wearing chemical protective clothing.
- Personnel not taking immediate corrective actions upon perceiving the attack, hearing a chemical agent alarm, being ordered to mask, or using incorrect masking procedures (not masking within nine seconds), or making incorrect use of decontamination kits/first aid treatment items.
- Marines who unmask or otherwise assume a lesser degrees of MOPP without being authorized to do so.

UNMASKING PROCEDURES

The unmasking procedures outlined below are to be initiated after being notified to do so by higher headquarters or the immediate commander. They show procedures to be used with and without the M256 chemical agent detector kit.

- 1. Initiate unmasking when a detector kit is available.
 - a. Disarm participants.
- b. Use the detector at different points in the parameter to determine the presence of chemical agents.
- c. If no agent is detected the senior Marine present will designate two or three individual Marines to unmask for 5 minutes and then remask for 10 minutes. This is to be done in the shade.
- d. If no symptoms appear, remainder of unit may unmask. However, they remain alert for symptoms.
- 2. When no detector kit is available, the following unmasking procedures will be adhered to:
 - a. Disarm participants.
- b. Two or three Marines take a deep breath, hold it, keep their eyes open, break the seal on their masks and hold the masks open for 15 seconds.
- c. With masks resealed and cleared, the Marines are checked for symptoms for next $10\ \text{minutes}$. This occurs in the shade.
- d. If no symptoms appear, the same Marines break the seal of their masks, take two or three deep breaths, then clear, and reseal their masks.
- e. If after 10 minutes no symptoms have appeared, the same Marines unmask for five minutes, and then remask.
- f. If after 10 more minutes no symptoms have appeared, the rest of the unit may unmask. However, they remain alert for symptoms.

NOTE: After each unmasking, always notify higher headquarters.

TASK: 10D.06.10 PERFORM PARTIAL CHEMICAL DECONTAMINATION

<u>CONDITION(S)</u>: Personnel and equipment have been contaminated by a Emergency decontamination has been accomplished. Time is not available for complete decontamination. The hazard is such that partial decontamination is required. All personnel are maintaining a maximum MOPP.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

.1 _____ Platoon personnel determine individual weapons and equipment using appropriate decontamination kits.

| .2 | The platoon commander determines the extent of decontamination required and decontamination priorities are established. |
|-------------|---|
| .3 | Contaminated protective covers are removed, decontaminated, or |
| .4 | Decontamination procedures are appropriate to items being decontaminated. (KI) |
| .5 | Platoon personnel conduct hasty decontamination of equipment and vehicles using appropriate expedient devices. |
| .6 | Adequacy of decontamination is determined. If inadequate: |
| | a. Procedures are repeated. |
| | b. Decontamination support is requested. |
| | c. Risk of using equipment is accepted. |
| .7 | Contaminated materials are discarded according to tactical SOP, marked as contaminated, and location provided to higher |
| .8 | The platoon commander reduces MOPP level, as feasible. |
| TASK: None. | |

<u>DECONTAMINATION PROCEDURES</u>

1. Initial decontamination of platoon equipment, vehicles, and crew-served weapons may be accomplished by:

KEY INDICATORS:

- a. Removing all gross contamination with sticks or other improvised devices which are buried after use.
- b. Utilizing M11 decontamination apparatus filled with DS2 to spray areas frequently used or touched. (Water is used to simulate DS2 in a training environment).
- 2. Contaminated items that may need special decontamination treatment are:
- a. POL, food, and water containers and munitions. These are washed with soapy water, rinsed, and thoroughly air dried.
- b. Communications equipment and other electronic equipment. Decontaminated with hot air, by weathering, or all metal parts are wiped with rags soaks with DS2 (water is used for training purposes).
- c. Optical instruments are blotted with rags and then wiped with lens cleaning solution or organic solvent.
- 3. Adequacy of decontamination is determined using the chemical agent detector kit. If contamination is still present, decontaminate again.
- 4. Hasty decontamination procedures can be developed in the vehicle wash down phase and the MOPP gear exchange phase.

- a. Vehicle wash down phase: Vehicle washdown should be completed within an hour for best results. If available, the most expedient manner for AAVs would be to "splash" a body of water such as a river or the ocean. The tactical situation may require an M12A1 decontamination apparatus be requested from higher headquarters.
- b. MOPP gear exchange phase: MOPP gear exchange is the exchange of protective clothing as soon as the tactical situation permits or within six hours of being contaminated. Proper security must be arranged. The buddy system is utilized. The area needs to be continually checked to be sure it is free of contamination. Once decontamination procedures have been completed, personnel may unmask to provide relief from the MOPP 4 posture.

TASK: 10D.06.11 COORDINATE FOR COMPLETE DECONTAMINATION OF EQUIPMENT

 $\underline{\text{CONDITION}(S)}$: While in support, the MCM platoon's equipment has been chemical agent. Emergency decontamination has been accomplished. Time is now available for complete decontamination, and support is available upon request.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

| | The platoon commander coordinates with the decontamination unit as to time of arrival, supplies, equipment, and personnel to be furnished to his contaminated unit. The estimated time the decontamination will be completed is included in this |
|-------------------------------|--|
| | The platoon commander requests route clearance to personnel decontamination station/equipment decontamination station (PDS/EDS) assembly area. The platoon's advance party (personnel to augment decontamination operation and establish |
| .3 | The platoon arrives at PDS/EDS assembly area and organizes for |
| .4 | Decontamination begins as scheduled. |
| | The platoon reorganizes in a clean area upwind of residual contamination and prepares for resumption of mission. |
| .6 | The platoon commander adjusts MOPP level, as feasible. |
| EVALUATOR INS | TRUCTIONS: None. |
| <u>KEY INDICATORS</u> : None. | |